Lectures on
Results on Bezout's Theorem

## By

W. Vogel

Tata Institute of Fundamental Research Bombay

## Lectures on

## Results on Bezout's Theorem

By<br>W. Vogel

Notes by
D.P. Patil

Published for the

## Tata Institute of Fundamental Research <br> Springer-Verlag <br> Berlin Heidelberg New York Tokyo 1984

Author<br>W. Vogel<br>Martin-Luther Universität<br>Sektion Mathematik<br>DDR-401 Halle<br>Universitäts-platz 6<br>German Democratic Republic

©Tata Institute of Fundamental Research. 1984

ISBN 3-540-12679-1 Springer-Verlag, Berlin. Heidelberg. New York. Tokyo<br>ISBN 0-387-12679-1 Springer-Verlag, New York. Heidelberg. Berlin. Tokyo

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form by print. microfilm or any other means without written permission from the Tata Institute of Fundamental Research, Colaba, Bombay 400005

Printed by
M.N. Joshi at The Book Centre Limited, Sion East, Bombay 400022

Published by

## H. Goetze,

Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, West Germany

## Printed in India

## Introduction

These notes are based on a series of lectures given at the Tata Institute in November and December, 1982. The lectures are centered about my joint work with Jürgen Stückrad [85] on an algebraic approach to the intersection theory. More-over, chapter II and III also contain new results.

Today, we have the remarkable theory of W.Fulton and R. Macperson on defining algebraic intersections:

Suppose $V$ and $W$ are subvarieties of dimension $v$ and $w$ of a nonsingular algebraic variety $X$ of dimension $n$. Then the equivalence class $V \cdot W$ of algebraic $v+w-n$ cycles which represents the algebraic intersection of $V$ and $W$ is defined up to rational equivalence in $X$. This intersection theory produces subvarieties $Y_{i}$ of $V \cap W$, cycle classes $\alpha_{i}$ on $Y_{i}$, positive integers $m_{i}$, with $\sum m_{i} \alpha_{i}$ representing $V \cdot W$, and $\operatorname{deg} \alpha_{i} \geq \operatorname{deg} Y_{i}$ even in the case $\operatorname{dim}(V \cap W) \neq v+w-n$.

Our object here is to give an algebraic approach to the intersection theory by studying a formula for $\operatorname{deg}(V) . \operatorname{deg}(W)$ in terms of algebraic data, if $V$ and $W$ are Gubvarieties of $X=\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$.

The basis of our formula is a method for expressing the intersection multiplicity of two properly intersecting varieties as the length of a certain primary ideal associated to them in a canonical way. Using the geometry of the join construction in $\mathbb{P}^{2 n+1}$ over a field extension of $K$, we may apply this method even if $\operatorname{dim}(V \cap W)>\operatorname{dim} V+\operatorname{dim} W-n$. More precisely, we will prove the following statement in Chapter II:

Let $X, Y$ be pure dimensional projective subvarieties of $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$. There is a collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of subvarieties of $X \cap Y$ (one of which may be $\phi$ ),
including all irreducible components of $X \cap Y$, and intersection numbers, say $j\left(X, Y ; C_{i}\right) \geq 1$, of $X$ and $Y$ along $C_{i}$ given by the length of primary ideals, such that

$$
\operatorname{deg}(X) \cdot \operatorname{deg}(Y)=\sum_{C_{i}} j\left(X, Y ; C_{i}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right),
$$

where we put $\operatorname{deg}(\phi)=1$.
The key is that our approach does provide an explicit description of the subvarieties $C_{i} \subset \mathbb{P}^{n}$ counted with multiplicities $j\left(X, Y ; C_{i}\right)$, which are canonically determined over a field extension of $K$.

In case $\operatorname{dim}(X \cap Y)=\operatorname{dim} X+\operatorname{dim} Y-n$, then our collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ only consists of the irreducible components $C$ of $X \cap Y$ and the multiplicities $j(X, Y ; C)$ coincide with Weil's intersection numbers; that is, our statement also provides the classical theorem of Bezout. Furthermore, by combining our approach with the properties of reduced system of parameters, we open the way to a deeper study of Serre's observations on "multiplicity" and "length" (see: J.-P.Serre [72], p.V-20).

In 1982, W. Fulton asked me how imbedded components contribute to intersection theory. Using our approach, we are able to study some pathologies in chapter III. (One construction is due to R. Achilles). Of course, it would be very interesting to say something about how imbedded components contribute to intersection multiplicities. Also, it appears hard to give reasonably sharp estimates on the error term between $\operatorname{deg}(X) . \operatorname{deg}(Y)$ and $\sum j\left(X, Y ; C_{j}\right) . \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{j}\right)$ or even $\sum \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{j}\right)$ where $C_{j}$ runs through all irreducible components of $X \cap Y$. Therefore, we will discuss some examples, applications and problems in chapter III.

I wish to express my gratitude to the Tata Institute of Fundamental Research of Bombay, in particular to Balwant Singh, for the kind invitation to visit the School of Mathematics. Dilip P. Patil has written these notes and it is a pleasure for me to thank him for his efficiency, his remarks and for the time- consuming and relatively thankless task of writing up these lecture notes. I am also grateful for the many insightful comments and suggestions made by persons attending the lectures, including R.C. Cowsik, N. Mohan Kumar, M.P. Murthy, Dilip P. Patil, Balwant singh, Uwe Storch and J.-L. Verdier. The typists of the School
of Mathematics have typed these manuscripts with care and I thank them very much.

Finally I am deeply grateful to R.Sridharan for showing me collected poems and plays of Rabindranath Tagore.

Let me finish with an example from "Stray birds":
The bird wishes it were a cloud.
The cloud wishes it were a bird.
However, all errors which now appear are due to myself.
Wolfgang Vogel

## NOTATION

The following notation will be used in the sequel.
We denote the set of natural numbers (respectively, non-negative integers, integers, rational numbers) by $\mathbb{N}$ (resp. . $\mathbb{Z}^{+}, \mathbb{Z}, Q$. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we write " $n \gg 1$ " for "all sufficiently large integers $n$ ". By a ring, we shall always mean a commutative ring with identity. All ring homomorphisms considered are supposed to be unitary and, in particular, all modules considered are unitary. If $A$ is a ring, $\operatorname{Spec}(A)$ denotes the set of all prime ideals of $A$. For any ideal $I \subset A$ and any A-module $M$, if $N \subset M$ is an A-submodule then $(N \underset{\dot{M}}{:} I):=\{m \in M \mid I \cdot m \subset N\}$.

For any field $K, \bar{K}$ denotes the algebraic closure of $K$ and $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ denotes the projective n-space over $K$.

## Contents

0 Historical Introduction ..... 1
A. The Classical Case ..... 1
B. The Non-classical Case ..... 10
1 Preliminary Results ..... 13
A. Preliminary Definitions and Remarks ..... 13
B. The General Multiplicity Symbol ..... 16
C. The HILBERT Function and the Degree ..... 32
D. Miscellaneous Results ..... 40
2 The Main Theorem ..... 47
A. The Statement of the Main Theorem ..... 47
B. The Join-procedure ..... 48
C. Step I of the Proof ..... 53
D. Step II of the Proof ..... 56
E. Step III of the Proof ..... 62
F. Consequences ..... 66
3 Examples. Applications and Problems ..... 69
A. Examples ..... 69
B. Applications of the Main Theorem ..... 83
C. Problems ..... 90

## Chapter 0

## Historical Introduction

## A. The Classical Case

The simplest case of Bezout's theorem over an algebraically closed field is the following very simple theorem.

## (0.1) Fundamental Principle

The number of roots of a polynomial $f(x)$ in one variable, counted with their multiplicities, equals the degree of $f(x)$.

This so-called fundamental theorem of algebra was conjectured by Girard (from the Netherlands) in 1629. In 1799, C.F. Gauss provided the first proof of this statement. M.Kneser [40] produced a very simple proof of this fundamental principle in 1981. This proof also yields a constructive aspect of the fundamental theorem of algebra.

The definition of this multiplicity is well-known and clear. Nowadays, the problem of determining the multiplicity of polynomial root by machine computation is also considered (see e.g. [101]).

The second simple case to consider is that of plane curves. The problem of intersection of two algebraic plane curves is already tackled by Newton; he and Leibnitz had a clear idea of 'elimination' process expressing the fact that two algebraic equations in one variable have a common root, and using such a process, Newton observed in [53] that
the abscissas (for instance) of the intersection points of two curves of respective degrees $m, n$ are given by an equation of degree $\leq m . n$. This result was gradually improved during the $18^{\text {th }}$ century, until Bezout, using a refined elimination process, was able to prove that, in general, the equation giving the intersections had exactly the degree $m . n$; however, no general attempt was made during that period to attach an integer measuring the 'multiplicity' of the intersection to each intersection point in such a way that the sum of multiplicities should always be m.n (see also [14]). Therefore the classical theorem of Bezout states that two plane curves of degree $m$ and $n$, intersect in atmost $m . n$ different points, unless they have infinitely many points in common. In this form, however, the theorem was also stated by Maclaurin in his 'Geometrica Organica', published in 1720 (see [48, p. 67/68]); nevertheless the first correct proof was given by Bezout. An interesting fact, usually not mentioned in the literature, is that: In 1764, Bezout not only proved the above mentioned theorem, but also the following n -dimensional version:

## (0.2)

Let $X$ be an algebraic projective sub-variety of a projective $n$-space. If $X$ is a complete intersection of dimension zero the degree of $X$ is equal to the product of the degrees of the polynomials defining $X$.

The proof can be found in the paper [4], [5] and [6]. In his book "on algebraic equations", published in 1770, [7], a statement of this theorem can be found already in the foreword. We quote from page XII:
'Le degré de $\ell^{\prime}$ équation finale résultante d'unnombre quelcoque d'équations complétes renfermant un pareil nombre d'inconnues, and de degrés quelconques, est égal au produit des exposants des degrés de ces équations. Théoréme dont $\ell$ a verité n'etait connue et démontrée que pout deux équations seulement.'

The theorem appears again on page 32 as theorem 47. The special cases $n=2,3$ are interpreted geometrically on page 33 in section $3^{0}$ and it is mentioned there, that these results are already known from Geometry. (For these historical remarks, see also ([61]).

Let us look at projective plane curves $C$ defined by the equation $F\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=0$ and $D$ defined by the equation $G\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=0$ of
degree $n$ and $m$, respectively, without common components. Then we get

## (0.3) BEZOUT'S Theorem.

$m . n=\sum_{P} i(C, D ; P)$ where the sum is over all common points $P$ of $C$ and $D$ and where the positive integer $i(C, D ; P)$ is the intersection multiplicity of $C$ and $D$ at $P$.

We wish to show that this multiplicity is defined, for instance, in terms of a resultant:

Given $P$, we may choose our coordinates so that at $P$ we have $X_{2}=1$ and $X_{O}=X_{1}=0$. By the Preparation Theorem of Weierstrass [102] (after a suitable change of coordinates) we can write
and

$$
F\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, 1\right)=f^{\prime}\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right) \cdot \bar{f}\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right)
$$

where $f^{\prime}\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right)$ and $g^{\prime}\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right)$ are power series in $X_{0}$ and $X_{1}$ such that $f^{\prime}(0,0) \neq 0 \neq g^{\prime}(0,0)$ and where

$$
\bar{f}\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right)=X_{1}^{e}+V_{1}\left(X_{0}\right) X_{1}^{e-1}+\cdots+V_{e}\left(X_{0}\right)
$$

and

$$
\bar{g}\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right)=X_{1}^{\ell}+W_{1}\left(X_{0}\right) X_{1}^{\ell-1}+\cdots+W_{\ell}\left(X_{0}\right)
$$

where $V_{i}\left(X_{0}\right)$ and $W_{j}\left(X_{0}\right)$ are power series with $V_{i}(0)=W_{j}(0)=0$. Following Sylvester [86], we define the $X_{1}$ resultant of $\bar{f}$ and $\bar{g}$, denoted by $\operatorname{Res}_{X_{1}}(\bar{f}, \bar{g})$, to the $(e+\ell) \times(e+\ell)$ determinant

$$
\left|\begin{array}{llll}
1 & V_{1} \cdots V_{e} & \\
& 1 V_{1} \cdots V_{e} & \\
& \cdots \cdots \cdots \cdots \cdots & \\
& & 1 V_{1} \cdots V_{e} \\
1 & W_{1} \cdots W_{\ell} & \\
& 1 W_{1} \cdots W_{\ell} & \\
& \cdots \cdots \cdots \cdots & \\
& & 1 W_{1} \cdots W_{\ell}
\end{array}\right|
$$

with zero in all blank spaces.
The application of the Preparation Theorem of Weirstrass, enables us to get, from the Resultant Theorem (see e.g. [92]), that $\operatorname{Res}_{X}(\bar{f}, \bar{g})=$ 0 . Now $\operatorname{Res}_{X_{1}}(\bar{f}, \bar{g})$ is a power series in $X_{0}$ and we define

$$
i(C, D ; P)=X_{0}-\text { order of } \operatorname{Res}_{X_{1}}(\bar{f}, \bar{g})
$$

It is also possible to define the above multiplicity by using the theory of infinitely near singularities (see, for instance, [1], ch. VI).

However, Poncelet, as a consequence of his general vaque 'Principle of continuity' given in 1822 , had already proposed to defined the intersection multiplicity at one point of two subvarieties $U, V$ of complementary dimensions (see definition below) by having $V$ (for instance) vary continuously in such a way that for some position $V^{\prime}$ of $V$ all the intersection points with $U$ should be simple, and counting the number of these points which collapses to the given point when $V^{\prime}$ tended to $V$, in such a way the total number of intersections (counted with multiplicities) would remain constant ('principle of conservation of number'); and it is thus that Poncelet proved Bezout's Theorem, by observing that a curve $C$ in a plane belongs to the continuous family of all curves of the same degree $m$, and that in that family there exist curves which degenerate into a system of straight lines, each meeting a fixed curve $\Gamma$ of degree $n$ in $n$ distinct points. Many mathematicians in the 19th century had extensively used such arguments, and in 1912, Severi had convincingly argued for their essential correctness, see [73].

In view of our exposition below, we wish to mention that the starting point of $C$. Chevalley's considerations [11], [12] has been the observation that the intersection multiplicity at the origin 0 of two affine curves $f(X, Y)=0, g(X, Y)=0$, may be defined to be the degree of the field extension $K((X, Y)) \mid K((f, g))$, where $K((x, y))$ is the field of quotients of the ring of power series in $X, Y$ with coefficients in the base field $K$, and where $K((f, g))$ is the field of quotients of the ring of those power series in $X, Y$ which can be expressed as power series in $f$ and $g$. From there $C$. Chevalley was led to the definition of multiplicity of a local ring with respect to a system of parameters, and then to the general notion of intersection multiplicity.

The ideal generalization of these observations would be the wellknown theorem of Bezout. First we note that the degree of an algebraic projective subvariety $V$ of a projective $n$-space $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ ( $K$ algebraically closed field), denoted by $\operatorname{deg}(V)$, is the number of points in which almost all linear subspaces $L \subset \mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ of dimension $n-d$ meet $X$, where $d$ is the dimension of $V$. Let $V_{1}, V_{2}$ be unmixed varieties of dimensions $r, s$ and degrees $d, e$ in $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$, respectively. Assume that all irreducible components $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ have dimension $=r+s-n$, and suppose that $r+s-n \geq 0$. For each irreducible component $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$, define intersection multiplicity $i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$. Then we should have

$$
\sum_{C} i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}(C)=\text { d.e },
$$

where the sum is taken over all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. The hardest part of this generalization is the correct definition of the intersection multiplicity and, by way, historically it took may attempts before a satisfactory treatment was given by $A$. Weil [103] in 1946. Therefore the proof of Bezout's Theorem has taken three centuries and a lot of work to master it.

To get equality in the above equation, one may follow different approaches to arrive at several different multiplicity theories. At the beginning of this century, one investigated the notion of the length of a primary ideal in order to define intersection multiplicities. This multiplicity is defined as follows:

Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right), V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)=V\left(I_{2}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ be projective varieties defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}, I_{2} \subset K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. Denote by $A\left(V_{i} ; C\right)$ the local ring of $V_{i}$ at $C$. Then we set

$$
\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=\text { the length of } A\left(V_{1} ; C\right) / I_{2} \cdot A\left(V_{1} ; C\right)
$$

For instance, this multiplicity yields the intersection multiplicity as set forth in the beginning for projective plane curves. Furthermore, this length provides the "right" intersection number for unmixed subvarieties $V_{1}, V_{2} \subset \mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ with $n \leq 3$ and $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$ (see, e.g., W. Gröbner [26]). Therefore prior to 1928 most mathematicians hoped
that this multiplicity yield for Bezout's Theorem the correct intersection multiplicity for the irreducible components of two projective varieties of arbitrary dimensions (see, e.g. Lasker [44], Macaulay [49]). And, by the way, we want to mention that Grobner's papers [26], [29] are a plea for adoptions of the notion of intersection multiplicity which is based on this length of primary ideals. He also posed the following problem:
(0.4) Problem. What are some of the deeper lying reasons that the socalled generalized Bezout's Theorem

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)
$$

is not true under certain circumstances?
In 1928, B.L.Van der Waerden [90] studied the space curve given parametrically by $\left\{s^{4}, s^{3} t, s^{3}, t^{4}\right\}$ to show that the length does not yield the correct multiplicity, in order for Bezout's Theorem to be valid in projective space $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ with $n \geq 4$ and he has written in [89, p. 770]:
"In these cases we must reject the notion of length and try to find another definition of multiplicity" (see also [64, p. 100].

We will study this example (see also [26], [50] or [32]). The leading coefficient of the Hilbert polynomial of a homogeneous ideal $I \subset$ $K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ will be denoted by $h_{0}(I)$. Let $V=V(I)$ be a projective variety defined by a homogeneous ideal $I \subset K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Then we have $\operatorname{deg}(V)=h_{0}(I)$.
(0.5) Example. Let $V_{1}, V_{2}$ be the subvarieties of projective space $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{4}$ with defining prime ideals:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathscr{Y}_{1}=\left(X_{0} X_{3}-X_{1} X_{2}, X_{1}^{3}-X_{0}^{2} X_{2}, X_{0} X_{2}^{2}-X_{1}^{2} X X_{3}, X_{1} X_{3}^{2}-X_{2}^{3}\right) \\
& \mathscr{Y}_{2}=\left(X_{0}, X_{3}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Then $V_{1} \cap V_{2}=C$ with the defining prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}: I(C)=$ $\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)$. It is easy to see that (see, e.g. (1.42) (iii) $h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}\right)=$ $4, h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}\right)=1, h_{0}(\mathscr{Y})=1$ and therefore $i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=4$. Since $\mathscr{Y}_{1}+$ $\mathscr{Y}_{2}=\left(X_{0}, X_{3}, X_{1} X_{2}, X_{1}^{3}, X_{2}^{3}\right) \subset\left(X_{0}, X_{3}, X_{1} X_{2}, X_{1}^{2}, X_{2}^{3}\right) \subset\left(X_{0}, X_{3}, X_{1}\right.$, $\left.X X_{2}^{3},\right) \subset\left(X_{0}, X_{3}, X_{1}, X_{2}^{2},\right) \subset\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)$, we have $\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=5$. Therefore we obtain
$\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}(C) \neq \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C)$
Nowadays it is well-known that

$$
\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)
$$

if and only if the local rings $A\left(V_{1}, C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ at $C$ and $A\left(V_{2}, C\right)$ of $V_{2}$ at $C$ are Cohen - Macaulay rings for all irreducible components $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ where $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$ (see [72], p. V20; see also (3.25)). We assume again that $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+$ $\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$. Without loss of generality, we may suppose, by applying our observations of $\S 2$ of chapter $I$, that one of the two intersecting varieties $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ is complete intersection, say $V_{1}$.

Having this assumption, we get that

$$
\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)
$$

for every irreducible component $C$ (see also (3.18). Let $V_{2}$ be a complete intersection. Then there arises another problem posed by D.A. Buchsbaum [9] in 1965.
(0.6) Problem. Is it true that $\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)-i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ is independent of $V_{2}$, that is, does there exist an invariant $I(A)$, of the local ring $A:=$ $A\left(V_{1} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ at $C$ such that

$$
\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)-i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=I(A) ?
$$

This is not the case, however. The first counter - example is given in [95]. The theory of local Buchsbaum rings started from this negative answer to the problem of D.A. Buchsbaum. The concept of Buchsbaum rings was introduced in [82] and [83], and the theory is now developing rapidly. The basic underlying idea of a Buchsbaum ring continues the well-known concept Cohen-Macaulay ring, its necessity being created by open questions in Commutative algebra and Algebraic geometry. For instance, such a necessity to investigate generalized Cohen Macaulay structure arose while classifying algebraic curves in $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{3}$ or while studying singularities of algebraic varieties. Furthermore, it was shown by Shiro Goto (Nihon University, Tokyo) and his colleagues that interesting and extensive classes of Buchsbaum rings do exist (see, e.g. [23]).

However, our observations from the Chapter II yield the intersection multiplicities by the length of well - defined primary ideals. Hence these considerations again provide the connection between the different view points which are treated in the work Lasker - Macaulay - Gröbner and Severi - van der Waerden - Weil concerning the multiplicity theory in the classical case, that is, in case $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{!} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$. We want to end this section with some remarks on Buchsbaum's problem. First we give the following definition:
(0.7) Definition. Let $A$ be a local ring with maximal ideal $\mathfrak{M}$. A sequence $\left\{a_{1}, \ldots, a_{r}\right\}$ of elements of is a $\mathfrak{M}$ is a weak $A$-sequence if for each $i=1, \ldots, r$

$$
\mathfrak{M} \cdot\left[\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{i-1}\right): a_{i}\right] \subseteq\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{i-1}\right)
$$

for $i=1$ we set $\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{i-1}\right)=(0)$ in A$)$.
If every system of parameters of $A$ is a weak $A$ - sequence, we say that $A$ is a Buchsbaum ring.

Note that Buchsbaum rings yields a generalization if Cohen Macaulay rings.

In connection with Buchsbaum's problem and with our observations concerning the theory of multiplicities in the paper [82], we get an important theorem (see [82]).
(0.8) Theorem. A local ring A is a Buchsbaum ring if and only if the difference between the length and the multiplicity of any ideal q generated by a system of parameters is independent of $q$.

In order to construct simple Buchsbaum rings and examples which show that the above problem is not true in general, we have to state the following lemma (see [82], [87], or [97]).
(0.9) Lemma. Let A be a local ring. First we assume that $\operatorname{dim}(A)=1$. The following statements are equivalent:
(i) A is a Buchsbaum ring.
(ii) $\mathfrak{M} U((0))=(0)$, where $U((0))$ is the intersection of all minimal primary zero ideals belonging to the ideal (0) in A. Now, suppose
that $\operatorname{dim}(A)>\operatorname{depth}(A) \geq 1$ then the following statements are equivalent:
(iii) $A$ is a Buchsbaum ring.
(iv) There exists a non-zero-divisor $x \in \mathfrak{M}^{2}$ such that $A /(x)$ is a Buchs-
baum ring.
(v) For every non-zero - divisor $x \in \mathfrak{M}^{2}$, the ring $A /(x)$ is a Buchsbaum ring.

Applying the statements (i), (ii) of the lemma, we get the following simple examples.
(0.10) Example. Let $K$ be any field
(1) We set $A:=K[[X, Y]] /(X) \cap\left(X^{2}, Y\right)$ then it is not difficult to show that $A$ is Buchsbaum non - Cohen - Macaulay ring.
(2) We set $A:=K[[X, Y]] /(X) \cap\left(X^{3}, Y\right)$ then $A$ is not a Buchsbaum ring.

For the view point of the theory of intersection multiplicities, we can construct the following examples by using the statements (iii), (iv) of the lemma.
(3) Take the curve $V \subset \mathbb{P}_{k}^{3}$ given parametrically by $\left\{S^{5}, S^{4} t, S t^{4}, t^{5}\right\}$. Let $A$ be the local ring of the affine cone over $V$ at the vertex, that is, $A=K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]_{\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)} / \mathscr{Y}_{V}$ where $\mathscr{Y}_{V}=\left(X_{0} X_{3}\right.$ $\left.X_{1} X_{2}, X_{0}^{3} X_{2}-X_{1}^{4}, X_{0}^{2} X_{2}^{2}-X_{1}^{3} X_{3}, X_{0} X_{2}^{3}-X_{1}^{2} X_{3}^{2}, X_{2}^{4}-X_{1} X_{3}^{3}\right)$. Then $A$ is not a Buchsbaum ring (see [62]). We get again this statement from the following explicit calculations:
Consider the cone $C(V) \subset \mathbb{P}_{k}^{4}$ with defining ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{V}$ and the surfaces $W$ and $W^{\prime}$ defined by the equations $X_{0}=X_{3}=0$ and $X_{1}=$ $X_{0}^{2}+X_{3}^{2}=0$, respectively. It is easy to see that $C(V) \cap W=$ $C(V) \cap W^{\prime}=C$, where $C$ is given by $X_{0}=X_{2}=X_{3}=X_{4}=0$. Some simple calculations yield:
$\ell(C(V), W ; C)=7, i(C(V), W ; C)=5$ and $\ell\left(C(V), W^{\prime} ; C\right)=13$,
$i\left(C(V), W^{\prime} ; C\right)=10$ and hence

$$
\ell(C(V), W ; C)-i\left(C(V), W^{\prime} ; C\right) \neq \ell\left(C(V), W^{\prime} ; C\right)-i\left(C(V), W^{\prime} ; C\right)
$$

Therefore this example shows that the answer to the above problem of D.A. Buchsbaum is negative.
(4) Take the curve $V \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}$ given parametrically by $\left\{s^{4}, s^{3} t, s t^{3}, t^{4}\right\}$. Let $A$ be the local ring of the affine cone over $V$ at the vertex, that is $A=$ $K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]_{\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)} \mathscr{Y}_{V}$, where $\mathscr{Y}_{V}=\left(X_{0} X_{3}-X_{1} X_{2}, X_{0}^{2} X_{2}-\right.$ $X_{1}^{3}, X_{0} X_{2}^{2}-X_{1}^{2} X_{3}, X_{1} X_{3}^{2}-X_{2}^{3}$ ). Then $A$ is a Buchsbaum ring (see e.g [83]).
(0.11) Remark. This last example has an interesting history. This curve was discovered by G. Salmon ([[67], p. 40]) already in 1849 and a little later in 1857 by J.Steiner ([[79], p. 138]) by using the theory of residual intersections. This curve was used by F.S.Macaulay ([[49], p. 98]) in 1916. His purpose was to show that not every prime ideal in a polynomial ring is perfect. In 1928, B.L. Van der Waerden [90] studied this example to show that the length of a primary ideal does not yield the correct local intersection multiplicity in order Bezout's theorem to be valid in projective space $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ with $n \geq 4$, and he has written (as cited already); "In these cases we must reject the notion of length and try to find another definition of multiplicity". As a result, the notion of intersection multiplicity of two algebraic varieties was put on a solid base by Van der Waerden for the first time, (see e.g. [88], [91], [92]). We know now that this prime ideal of F.S. Macaulay is not a Cohen-Macaulay ideal, but a Buchsbaum ideal (i.e., the local ring of $A$ of example (4) is not a Cohen-Macaulay ring, but is a Buchsbaum ring). This fact motivated us to create a foundation for the theory of Buchsbaum rings. (For more specific information on Buchsbaum rings, see also the forthcoming book by $W$. Vogel with J. Stückrad.)

## B. The Non-classical Case

Let $V_{1}, V_{2} \subset \mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ be algebraic projective varieties. The projective dimension theorem states that every irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has dimension $\geq \operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} v_{2}-n$. Knowing the dimensions of the
irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$, we can ask for more precise information about the geometry of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. The classical case in the first section works in case of $\operatorname{dim} V_{1} \cap V_{2}=\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$. The purpose of this section is to study the non-classical case, that is $\operatorname{dim} V_{1} \cap V_{2}>\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$ If $V_{1}, V_{2}$ are irreducible varieties, what can one say about the geometry of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ ?. A typical question in this direction was asked by 5 . Kleiman: Is the number of irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ bounded by the Bezout's number $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)$ ? A special case of this question was studied by C.G.J. Jacobi [36] already in 1836. But we want to mention that Jacobi's observations relies on a modification of an idea of Euler [16] from 1748. We would like to describe Jacobi's observation.

## (0.12) JACOBI'S Example

Let $F_{1}, F_{2}, F_{3}$ be three hypersurfaces in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}$. Assume that the intersection $F_{1} \cap F_{2} \cap F_{3}$ is given by one irreducible curve, say $C$ and a finite set of isolated points, say $P_{1}, \ldots, P_{r}$. Then $\prod_{i=1}^{3} \operatorname{deg}\left(F_{i}\right)-\operatorname{deg}(C) \geq$ number of isolated points of $F_{1} \cap F_{2} \cap F_{3}$. The first section of this example was given by Salmon and Fielder [68] in their book on geometry, published in 1874 , by studying the intersection of $r$ hypersurfaces in $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$. The assumption is again that this intersection is given by one irreducible curve and a finite set of isolated points. In 1891, M, Pieri [59] studied the intersection of two subvarieties, say M. Pieri [59] studied the intersection of two subvarieties, say $V_{1}, V_{2}$ of $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ assuming that $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ is given by one irreducible component of dimension $\operatorname{dim} V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ and a finite set of isolated points. Also, it seems that a starting point of an intersection theory in the non-classical case was discovered by M.Pieri. In 1947, 56 years after M. Pieri, F. Severi [78] suggested a beautiful solution to the decomposition of Bezout's number $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)$ for any irreducible subvarieties $V_{1}, V_{2}$ of $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$. Unfortunately, Sever i's solution is not true. The first counter- example was given by $R$. Lazarfeld [45] in 1981. But Lazarfeld also shows how Severi's procedure can be modified so that it does yield a solution to the stated problem.

Nowadays, we have a remarkable theory of W. Fulton and R. Mac-

Pherson on defining algebraic intersection (see, e.g. [18], [19]). Suppose $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ are subvarieties of dimension $r$ and $s$ of a non-singular algebraic variety $X$ of dimension $n$. Then the equivalence class $V_{1} \cdot V_{2}$ of algebraic $r+s-n$ cycles which represents the algebraic intersection of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ is defined upto rational equivalence in $X$. This intersection theory produces subvarieties $W_{i}$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$, cycle classes $\alpha_{i}$ on $W_{i}$ positive integers $m_{i}$ with $\sum m_{i} \alpha_{i}$ representing $V_{1} \cdot V_{2}$ and $\operatorname{deg} \alpha_{i} \geq \operatorname{deg} W_{i}$ even in the case $\operatorname{dim} V_{1} \cap V_{2} \neq r+s-n$.

Our object here is to describe the algebraic approach of [85] (see also [56]) to the intersection theory by studying a formula for $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)$. $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)$ in terms of algebraic data, if $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ are pure dimensional subvarieties of $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$. The basis of this formula is a method (see [8], [98]) for expressing the intersection multiplicity of two properly intersecting varieties as the length of a certain primary ideal associated to them in a canonical way. Using the geometry of the join construction in $\mathbb{P}_{\bar{K}}^{2 n+1}$ over a field extension $\bar{K}$ of $K$ we may apply this method even if $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap\right.$ $\left.V_{2}\right)>\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$. The key is that algebraic approach provides an explicit description of the subvarieties $C_{i}$ and the intersection numbers $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right)$ which are canonically determined over a field extension of $K$.

## Chapter 1

## Preliminary Results

## A. Preliminary Definitions and Remarks

## (1.1)

Let $R$ be a noetherian ring and $I$ be an ideal in $R$. The Krull-dimension, $K-\operatorname{dim}(I)$ of $I$ is the Krull-dimension of the ring $R / I$. Suppose that $I=q_{1} \cap \cdots \cap q_{r}$ is a primary decomposition of $I$, where $q_{i}$ is $\mathscr{Y}_{i}$-primary, $\mathscr{Y}_{i} \in \operatorname{Spec}(R)$ for $1 \leq i \leq r$. We say that $q_{i}$ is a $\mathscr{Y}_{i}$-primary component of $I$ any $\mathscr{Y}_{i}$ is an associated prime of $R / I$. We write $\operatorname{Ass}(R / I)=$ $\mathscr{Y}_{1}, \ldots, \mathscr{Y}_{r}$. Suppose that $K-\operatorname{dim}(I)=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(q_{i}\right)$ for $1 \leq i \leq s \leq r$. We set $U(I):=\bigcap_{i=1}^{s} q_{i}$. This ideal is well defined and is called the unmixed part of $I$. It is clear that $I \subset U(I)$ and $k \operatorname{dim} U(I)$. An ideal $I \subset R$ is called unmixed if and only if $I=U(I)$. A ring $R$ is called unmixed if the zero ideal (0) in $R$ is unmixed.

Let $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Spec}(R)$ and $q$ be a $\mathscr{Y}$-primary ideal. The length of the Artinian local ring $(R / q) \mathscr{Y}$ is called the length of $q$ and we will denote it by $\ell_{R}(q)$. It is easy to see that the length of $q$ is the number of terms in a composition series, $q=q_{1} \subset q_{2} \subset \cdots \subset q_{\ell}=\mathscr{Y}$ for $q$, where $q_{1}, \cdots, q_{r}$ are $\mathscr{Y}$-primary ideals.

Remark. (see [[106], Corollary 2 on p. 237, vol. 1]) Let $\mathfrak{M} \subset R$ be a maximal ideal of $R$ and $q \subset R$ be a $\mathfrak{M}$ primary ideal. If $q=q_{1} \subset$
$q_{2} \subset \cdots \subset q_{\ell}=\mathfrak{M}$ is a composition series for $q$, where $q_{1}, \ldots, q_{\ell}$ are $\mathfrak{M}_{i \text {-primary ideals. Then there exist }} a_{i} \in q_{i}, 2 \leq i \leq \ell$, such that
(i) $a_{i} \notin q_{i-1}$
(ii) $q_{i}=\left(q_{i-1}, a_{i}\right)$
(iii) $\mathfrak{M} q_{i} \subset q_{i-1}$ for all $2 \leq i \leq \ell$.

Proof. (i) and (ii) are easy to prove.
(iii) Replacing $R$ by $R / q$ we may assume that $q=0$ and $R$ is Artinian local. Suppose $\mathfrak{M} q_{i} \not \subset q_{i-1}$ for some $2 \leq i \leq \ell$. Then we get $q_{i-1} \subsetneq$ $\left(q_{i-1}+\mathfrak{M} q_{i}\right)=q_{i}=\left(q_{i-1}, a_{i}\right)$. Therefore we can write $a_{i}=q+m a_{i}$ for some $q \in q_{i-1}$ and $m \in \mathfrak{M}$. Then $a_{i}=\frac{1}{(1-m)} \cdot q \in q_{i-1}$ which is a contradiction to (i).

Let $R$ be a semi-local noetherian ring and $\operatorname{rad}(R)$ be the Jacobson radical of $R$. An ideal $q \subset R$ is called an ideal of definition if $(\operatorname{rad}(R))^{n} \subset$ $q \subset \operatorname{rad}(R)$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

## (1.2) The Hilbert-samuel Function

Let $R$ be a semilocal noetherian ring and $q \subset R$ be an ideal of definition. Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module. The numerical function $H_{M}^{1}(q,-): \mathbb{Z}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^{+}$given by $H_{M}^{1}(q, n)=\ell\left(M / q^{n+1} M\right)<\infty$ is called the Hilbert-Samuel function of $q$ on $M$. If $M=R$ we say that $H^{1}(q,-):=H_{R}^{1}(q,-)$ is the Hilbert-Samuel function of $q$. If $(R, \mathscr{M})$ is a local ring then $H_{R}^{1}(-):=H^{1}(\mathcal{M},-)$ is called the Hilbert-Samuel function of $R$.

The following theorem is well known(for proof, see [72] or [106]).

## Hilbert-samuel Theorem.

Let $R$ be a semilocal noetherian ring and $q \subset R$ be an ideal of definition. Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module. Then $H_{M}^{1}(q,-)$ is, for $n \gg$ 1, a polynomial $P_{M}(q,-)$ in $n$, with coefficients in $Q$. The degree of $P_{M}(q,-)$ is $\delta$ where $\delta=$ Krull dimension of $\left.M\left(:=k-\operatorname{dim} R / a n n_{R}\right)(m)\right)$.

We will write this polynomial in the following form:

$$
P_{M}(q, n)=e_{0}\binom{n+d}{d}+e_{1}\binom{n+d-1}{d-1}+\cdots+e_{d}
$$

where $e_{0}(\geq 0) \cdot e_{1}, \ldots, e_{d}$ are integers and $d=K-\operatorname{dim}(r)$. The multiplicity of $q$ on $M, e_{0}(q ; M)$, is defined by $e_{0}(q ; M):=e_{0}$. Note that $e_{0}(q ; M):=0$ if and only if $K-\operatorname{dim}(M)<K-\operatorname{dim}(R)$. The positive integer $e_{0}(q ; R)$ is called the multiplicity of $q$. If $R$ is local and $q=\mathscr{M}$ is the maximal ideal of $R$ then $e_{0}(R):=e_{0}(\mathscr{M} ; R)$ is called the multiplicity of $R$.

## Remark.

(i) Let $(A, \mathscr{M}) \rightarrow(B, \mathscr{N})$ be a flat local homomorphism of local rings. Assume that $\mathscr{M} B=\mathscr{N}$. Then for every $\mathscr{M}$-primary ideal $q$ of $A$ we have

$$
e_{0}(q ; A)=e_{0}(q B ; B)
$$

Proof. It is easy to see (see, e.g. [[34], (1.28)] that, $H_{B}^{1}(q B, t)=\ell_{B}$ $\left(B / q^{t} B\right)=\ell_{B}\left(A / q^{t} \otimes_{A} B\right)=\ell_{A}\left(A / q^{t}\right) \ell_{B}\left(B / \mathscr{M}_{B}\right)=\ell_{A}\left(A / q^{t}\right)=H_{A}^{1}(q, t)$ for all $t \geq 0$. Therefore $e_{0}(q B ; B)=e_{0}(q ; A)$.

Let $A=\underset{n \geq 0}{\oplus} A_{n}$ be a graded ring such that $A_{0}$ is artinian and $A$ is generated as an $A_{0}$-algebra by $r$ elements $\bar{x}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{r}$. of $A_{1}$. Let $N=$ $\oplus N_{n}$ be a finitely generated graded $A$-module. The numerical function $H_{A}^{n \geq 0}(N,-): \mathbb{Z}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^{+}$defined by $H_{A}^{1}(N, n)=\ell_{A_{0}}\left(N / N_{n+1}\right)$ is called the Hilbert function of $N$. The following is a well-known theorem (for proof, see [55] or [72]).

Theorem HILBERT. The function $H_{A}^{1}(N,-)$ is, for $n \gg 1$, a polynomial $P_{A}(N,-)$ in $n$ with coefficients in $Q$. The degree of $P_{A}(N,-)$ is $\leq r$.

We will write this polynomial in the following form:

$$
P_{A}(N, n)=h_{0}\binom{n+r}{r}+h_{1}\binom{n+r-1}{r-1}+\cdots+h_{r}
$$

where $h_{0}(\geq 0), h_{1}, \ldots, h_{r}$ are integers.

Note that

$$
H_{A}^{0}(N, n)=\ell_{A_{0}}\left(N_{n}\right)=h_{0}\binom{n+r-1}{r-1}+h_{1}^{\prime}\binom{n+r-2}{r-2}+\cdots+h_{r-l}^{\prime},
$$

where $h_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, h_{r}^{\prime}$ are integers.

## Remark.

(ii) From the exact sequence

$$
0 \rightarrow\left(0 \underset{\dot{N}}{\dot{X}} \bar{x}_{1}\right) \rightarrow N \xrightarrow{\bar{x}} N \rightarrow N / \bar{X}_{1} \rightarrow 0
$$

of graded modules, it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& H_{A / \bar{X}_{1}}^{1}\left(M / \bar{X}_{1} N, n\right)-H_{A / \bar{X}_{1}}^{1}\left(\left(0 \underset{N}{\dot{N}} \bar{X}_{1}\right), n-1\right) \\
& =H_{A}^{0}(N, n) \text { for all } n \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore we have $h_{0}\left(N / \bar{X}_{1} N\right)-h_{0}\left(\left(0 \underset{\dot{N}}{:} \bar{X}^{1}\right)\right)=h_{0}(N)$.
(iiii) Let $R$ be a semi-local ring and $q=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) \subset R$ be an ideal of definition generated by a system of parameters $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ for $R$. Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module.
Then $H_{M}^{1}(q, n)=H_{g r_{q}}^{1}\left(g r_{q}(M), n\right)$ for all $n$. Therefore $P_{M}(q, n)$ $=P_{g r_{q}(R)}\left(g r_{q}(M), n\right)$ for all n and $e_{0}(q ; M)=h_{0}\left(g r_{q}(m)\right)$, where $g r_{q}(R)=\underset{n \geq 0}{\oplus} q^{n} / q^{n+1}$ and $g r_{q}(M)=\underset{n \geq 0}{\oplus} q^{n} M / q^{n+1} M$.

## B. The General Multiplicity Symbol

Let $R$ be a noetherian ring and $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module. Let $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$. We shall now define the general multiplicity symbol, $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)$, of $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ on $M$.
(1.3) Definition. Let $R$ be a noetherian ring and $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module. Let $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$. We
shall define $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)$, by induction on $d$. If $d=0$, then define $e_{R}(\cdot \mid M)=\ell_{R}(M)<\infty$. Assume that $d \geq 1$ and the multiplicity symbol has been defined for $s \leq d-1$ elements and all modules. Define $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M / x_{1} M\right)-e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid(0\right.$ : $\left.x_{1}\right)$ ). It is clear that $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)$ is an integer (in fact, non-negative, see (1.9).
(1.4) Remarks. (i) By induction on $d$, it follows that $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.\left.x_{d} \mid M\right)\right)=\ell(M / q M)-\ell\left(\left(q_{d-1} M \dot{M} x_{d}\right) / q_{d-1} M\right)-\sum_{k=1}^{d-1} e_{R / q_{k}}\left(x_{k+1}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.x_{d} \mid\left(q_{k-1} M \underset{\dot{M}}{\dot{~}} x_{k}\right) / q_{k-1} M\right)$ where $q_{k}=\left(x_{1}, \cdots, x_{K}\right) R, 0 \leq k \leq$ $d-1, q=\left(x_{1}, \cdots, x_{d}\right)$.
(ii) Assume that $d \geq 2$ and $1 \leq m<d$. Then

$$
e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=\sum_{v} \varepsilon_{v} e_{R / q_{m-1}}\left(x_{m}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M_{v}\right)
$$

where $\epsilon_{v}= \pm 1$ and $M_{v}$ are uniquely determined by $M$ and $x_{1}, \ldots$, $x_{m-1}$.

## Some Properties of the General Multiplicity Symbol

## (1.5) The additive property

Let $0 \rightarrow M^{\prime} \rightarrow M^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow 0$ be an exact sequence of finitely generated $R$-modules and $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$. Then

$$
e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M^{\prime}\right)+e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M^{\prime \prime}\right)
$$

(1.6) Corollary. Let $o \rightarrow M_{p} \rightarrow M_{p-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow M_{1} \rightarrow M_{0} \rightarrow 0$ be an exact sequence of finitely generated $R$-modules and $x_{1}, \cdots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$. Then

$$
\sum_{i=0}^{p}(-1)^{i} e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M_{i}\right)=0
$$

Proof. It is convenient to prove (1.5) and (1.6) simultaneously. Proof by induction on $d$. If $d=0$ then

$$
\sum_{i=0}^{p}(-1)^{i} e_{R}\left(\cdot \mid M_{i}\right)=\sum_{i=0}^{p}(-1)^{i} \ell\left(M_{i}\right)=0
$$

Now suppose that $d=s+1, s \geq 0$ and that (1.5) and (1.6) holds for $d=s$. We have an exact sequence

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0 \rightarrow\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}^{\prime}}{\dot{\dot{M}}} x_{1}\right) \rightarrow\left(0 \underset{\dot{\dot{M}}}{\dot{M^{\prime \prime}}} x_{1}\right) \rightarrow\left(x_{1}\right) \rightarrow M^{\prime} / x_{1} M^{\prime} \\
& \rightarrow M / x_{1} M \rightarrow M^{\prime \prime} / x_{1} M^{\prime \prime} \rightarrow 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore by induction hypothesis, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M / x_{1} M\right)-e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}^{\prime}}{\dot{\prime}} x_{1}\right)\right) \\
& \quad=e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M^{\prime} / x_{1} M^{\prime}\right)-e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid\left(0 \dot{\dot{M}^{\prime}} \dot{x_{1}}\right)\right) \\
& \left.\quad \quad+e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M^{\prime \prime} / x_{1} M^{\prime \prime}\right)-e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) \mid\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}^{\prime \prime}}{\dot{\prime}} x_{1}\right)\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \cdots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \cdots, x_{d} \mid M^{\prime}\right)+e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \cdots, x_{d} \mid M^{\prime \prime}\right)$.

## (1.7) The Exchange Property

Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$. Then

$$
e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{i_{1}}, \ldots, x_{i_{d}} \mid M\right)
$$

for every permutation $\left(i_{1}, \ldots, i_{d}\right)$ of $(1, \ldots, d)$.
Proof. By remark (1.4) (ii), it is enough to prove that,

$$
e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{2}, x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)
$$

Let $K$ be any finitely generated $R /\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)$-module. Then we denote $e_{R /\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right)}\left(x_{3}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid K\right)$ by $[K]$.

Now, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=\left[M /\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right) M\right]-\left[\left(0 \underset{M / x_{1} M}{\vdots} x_{2}\right)\right] \\
& -\left[\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x_{1}\right) / x_{2}\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x_{1}\right)\right]+\left[\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x_{2}\right)\right]=[a]-[b]-[c]+[d],
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
[a]=\left[M /\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right) M\right],[b]=\left[\left(0 \underset{M / x_{1} M}{\vdots} x_{2}\right)\right],[c]=\left[\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{\dot{\circ}} x_{1}\right) / x_{2}\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{\dot{\dot{M}}} x_{1}\right)\right]
$$

and $\quad[d]=\left[\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}_{1}}{:} x_{2}\right)\right]$, with $M_{i}:=\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x_{i}\right)$ for $i=1,2$.
Now,

$$
\left(0 \underset{M / x_{1} M}{\vdots} x_{2}\right) \xrightarrow{\sim}\left(x_{1} M: x_{2}\right) / x_{1} M,\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}_{1}}{:} x_{2}\right)=\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{x_{1}}\right) \cap\left(0 \dot{\dot{M}} x_{2}\right)
$$

Therefore, $[a]$ and $[d]$ are symmetric in $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$. Thus it is enough to prove that $[b]+[c]$ is also symmetric in $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$. Since $x_{1} M \subset$ $x_{1} M+\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x_{2}\right) \cap\left(x_{1} M \underset{\dot{M}}{\dot{\prime}} x_{2}\right)$ we get by (1.5)

$$
\begin{aligned}
{[b] } & =\left[x_{1} M+\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} M x_{2}\right) / x_{1} M\right]+\left[\left(x_{1} M: x_{2}\right) / x_{1} M+\left(0 \dot{\dot{M}} x_{2}\right)\right] \\
& =\left[\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x_{2}\right) / x_{1} M \cap\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x_{2}\right)\right]+\left[x_{1} M \cap x_{2} M / x_{1} x_{2} M\right]=[e]+[f]
\end{aligned}
$$

where $[e]=\left[\left(0: x_{2}\right) / x_{1} M \cap\left(0: x_{2}\right)\right]$ and $[f]=\left[x_{1} M \cap x_{2} M / x_{1} x_{2} M\right]$. Clearly [ $f$ ] is symmetric in $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$. Now consider $[c]+[e]$. Since $x_{1} M \cap\left(0: x_{2}\right)=x_{1}\left(0: x_{1} x_{2}\right)$ and $x_{2}\left(0: x_{2}\right) \subset x_{2}\left(0: x_{1} x_{2}\right) \subset x_{1}\left(0: x_{2}\right)$ we get by $(1.5),[e]+[c]$

$$
\begin{aligned}
= & {\left[x_{2}\left(0 \dot{M} x_{1} x_{2}\right) / x_{2}\left(0 x_{1}^{x}\right)\right]+\left[\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{\dot{M}} x_{1}\right) / x_{2}\left(0 \dot{\dot{M}} x_{1} x_{2}\right)\right] } \\
& +\left[\left(0 \dot{\dot{M}} x_{2}\right) / x_{1}\left(0 \dot{M} x_{1} x_{2}\right)\right] \\
= & {[g]+[h] }
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
[g]=\left[x_{2}\left[\left(0: x_{1} x_{2}\right) / x_{2}\left(0: x_{1}\right)\right]\right. \text { and }
$$

$$
[h]=\left[\left(0: x_{1}\right) / x_{2}\left(0: x_{M}^{x_{1}} x_{2}\right)\right]+\left[\left(0: x_{M}\right) / x_{1}\left(0: x_{M} x_{2}\right)\right] .
$$

Clearly [ $h$ ] is symmetric in $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$ and since $\left(0: x_{1} x_{2}\right) /\left(0: x_{1}\right)+$ $\left(0: x_{M}\right) \stackrel{x_{2}}{\sim} x_{2}\left(0: x_{M} x_{2}\right) / x_{2}\left(0: x_{M}\right),[g]=\left[\left(0: x_{M} x_{2}\right) / x_{2}\left(0: x_{M}\right)\right.$ $\left.\left.+\stackrel{M}{0}: x_{2}\right)\right]$ is also symmetric in $x_{1} \stackrel{M}{\text { and }} x_{2}$. Therefore $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=$ $[a]+[d]-[f]-[g]-[h]$ is symmetric in $x_{1}$ and $x_{2}$. This completes the proof.

## (1.8)

Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$. Suppose $x_{i}^{m} M=0$ for some $1 \leq i \leq d$ and $m \in \mathbb{N}$. Then $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=0$.

Proof. By (1.7) we may assume the $i=1$. Proof by induction on $m$. If $m=1$ then $M=M / x_{1} M$ and $\left(0: x_{1}\right)=M$ and hence $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=$ $e_{R} / x_{1}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)-e_{R} /_{x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)-e_{R} / x_{1}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=0$.

Now suppose that $d=s+1, s \geq 0$ and the result holds for $d=s$. We have by (1.5)

$$
e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid x_{1} M\right)+e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M / x_{1} M\right)
$$

28 Since $x_{1}^{m-1}\left(x_{1} M\right)=x_{1}\left(M / x_{1} M\right)=0$, by induction the result follows.

## (1.9)

Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$. Then

$$
0 \leq e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) \leq \ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M\right)<\infty .
$$

Proof. First, by induction on $d$, we show $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) \leq 0$. If $d=0$ then $e_{R}(\cdot \mid M)=\ell_{R}(M) \geq 0$. Now suppose that $d=s+1, s>0$ and the result holds for $d=s$.

Put $N=M /\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right)$. If $\mathscr{M} \gg 1$, then it is easy to see that $\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right)=$ 0 . From (1.5) and (1.8) we get $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(X_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid N\right)=$ $e_{R}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid N / x_{1} N\right)$ and hence, by induction, it follows that $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.x_{d} / M\right) \geq 0$. The second inequality follows from (1.4) (i).
(1.10) Corollary. If $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M=M$, then $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=0$.
(1.11) Proposition. Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module. Let $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d-1}, x$ and $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d-1}, y$ be two systems of parameters for $R$. Then we have $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d-1}, x y \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x \mid M\right)+e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.x_{d-1}, y \mid M\right)$.

Proof. By induction on $d$. Suppose $d=1$. Then we have exact sequences

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0 \rightarrow \underset{M}{(x y M}: y) / x M \rightarrow M / x M \xrightarrow{y} M / x y M \rightarrow M / y M \rightarrow 0 \\
& 0 \rightarrow(0: x) \rightarrow(0: x y) \xrightarrow[M]{x}(0: x) \rightarrow \underset{M}{(0: x) /(0: x y)} \rightarrow 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore we get

$$
\begin{array}{cc} 
& \ell(M / y M)+\ell(M / x M)=\ell(M / x y M)+\ell((x y M: y) / x M), \\
\text { and } \quad \ell((0: y))+\ell((0: x))=\ell((0: x y))+\ell((0: y))((0: x y)) .
\end{array}
$$

Now, it is easy to see that $(0: y) /(0: x y) \xrightarrow[M]{\sim}(x y M \underset{M}{\dot{M}} y) / x M$ is an isomorphism. Therefore we get that

$$
\begin{aligned}
e_{R}(x \mid M)+e_{R}(y \mid M) & =\ell(M / x M)-\ell((0: x))+\ell(M / y M)-\ell((0: y)) \\
& =\ell(M / x y M)-\ell_{M}((0: x y))=e_{R}(x y \mid M) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Now suppose that $d=s+1, s \geq 1$ and the result holds for $d=s$. Let $q=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d-1}\right)$. Then, by induction, we have

$$
e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d-1}, x y \mid M\right)=e_{R} / x_{1}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d-1}, x y \mid M / x_{1} M\right)
$$

$$
\begin{array}{r}
-e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d}, x y \mid\left(0: x_{1}\right)\right. \\
M \\
e_{R} /_{x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d-1}, x y \mid M\right)=e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d-1}, x y \mid M / x_{1} M\right) \\
-e_{R} / x_{1}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d-l}, x \mid\left(0: x_{1}\right)\right. \\
M \\
-e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d-l}, y \mid\left(0: x_{1}\right)\right. \\
M
\end{array}
$$

(1.12) Corollary. For any positive integers $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{d}$, we have
(i) $e_{R}\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}} M\right)=n_{1} \ldots n_{d} e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)$
(ii) $0 \leq e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) \leq \frac{\ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)}{n_{1} \ldots n_{d}}$

Proof. (i) follows from $\sqrt{(1.7)}$ and (1.11). (ii) follows from (i) and (1.9)
(1.13) Corollary. If $x_{i}^{m_{M}} \subset\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{i-1}, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M$ for some $i \leq$ $i \leq d$ and $m \in \mathbb{N}$, then $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=0$.

Proof. By (1.7) we may assume that $i=1$. If $n>m$, then $\left(x_{1}^{n}, x_{2}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.x_{d}\right) M=\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M$ and so, by (1.12), we get, $0 \leq e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) \leq$ $\frac{\ell\left(M /\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M\right)}{n} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Hence $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=0$.
(1.14) Proposition. Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$ contained in $\operatorname{rad}(R)$. Then $e_{r}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=\ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M\right)$ if and only if $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ is an $M-$ sequence, that is, $\left(\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{i-1}\right) M \underset{M}{:} x_{i}\right)=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{i-1}\right) M$ for $1 \leq i \leq d$.

Proof. (<=) This implication follows from1.14(i) (=>) Proof by induction on $d$. Suppose $d=1$. Then we have $\ell\left(M / x_{1} M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1} \mid M\right)=$ $\ell_{R}\left(M / x_{1} M\right)-\ell_{R}\left(\left(0: x_{1}\right)\right)$. Therefore, we get $\ell_{R}\left(\left(0: x_{1}\right)\right)=0$, that is, $\left(0: x_{1}\right)=0$

M
Now suppose that $d=s+1$ and the result holds for $d=s$.
Let $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{d}$ be arbitrary positive integers. Then by (1.9) and
(1.12) (i) we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e_{R}\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) \leq l\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right) \leq n_{1} \ldots \ldots n_{d} l \\
& \left.\quad\left(M /\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M\right)=n_{1} \ldots \ldots n_{d} e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) \mid M\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Put $N=M /\left(0: x_{1}\right)$. Then by (1.8) we have M

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right. & \left.\left.=e_{R}\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) \mid N\right) \\
& \leq l\left(N /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right)=l\left(M /\left(0 x_{1}\right)+\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

and hence $\left(0: x_{1}\right) \subset\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M$ for arbitrary positive integers $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{d}$. Then we get that $\left(0: x_{M}\right) \subset \bigcap_{n \geq 0}\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x^{n_{d}}\right) M \subset \bigcap_{n \geq 0} q^{n} M=$ 0 by Krull's Intersection Theorem, where $q=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)$.

Now,

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M / x_{1} M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=l \\
& \quad\left(M /\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M\right)=l\left(M / x_{1} M /\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M / x_{1} M\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, by induction, we get that $\left\{x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d}\right\}$ is $M / x_{1} M$-sequence.

This completes the proof.
(1.15) Corollary. (i) Let $(R, \mathscr{M})$ be a noetherian local ring. Then $R$ is a Cohen-Macaulay ring if and only if there exists a system of parameters $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right\}$ for $R$ such that $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid R\right)=32$ $l\left(R /\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)\right)$.
(ii) Let $(R, \mathscr{M})$ be a noetherian local ring. Then $R$ is a Cohen-Macaulay ring if and only iffor every system of parameters $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ for $R$, we have $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid R\right)=l\left(R /\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)\right)$.

Proof. (i) Clear. (ii) Follows from [71, Theorem 2, VI-20] and 1.14).

## (1.16) The limit formula of Lech:

Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$. Let $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{d}$ be positive integers. Then

$$
\lim _{\min \left(n_{i}\right) \rightarrow \infty} \frac{l\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)}{n_{1} \cdots \cdot n_{d}}=e_{R}\left(x_{1} \ldots x_{d} \mid M\right) .
$$

Proof. Proof by induction on $d$. Suppose $d=1$. Then, for any $n>0$, we have $e_{R}\left(x^{n} \mid M\right)=l\left(M / x^{n} M\right)-l\left(\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x^{n}\right)\right)$. Choose an integer $m>0$ such that $\left(0 \dot{\dot{M}} x^{n}\right)=\left(0 \dot{\dot{M}} x^{m}\right)$ for all $n \geq m$. Therefore, by (1.12)(i), we have $e_{R}\left(x^{n} \mid M\right)=n e_{R}(x \mid M)=\ell\left(M \mid x^{n} M\right)-l\left(\left(0 \underset{\dot{M}}{\dot{x}} x^{m}\right)\right)$ for $n \geq m$. Thus $e_{R}(x \mid M)=\frac{\ell\left(M / x^{n} M\right)}{n}+C / n$, where $C$ is independent of $n$. In particular, we get

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{l\left(M / x^{n} M\right)}{n}=e_{R}(x \mid M)
$$

Now suppose that $d=s+1, s \geq 1$ and the result holds for $d=s$.
Using (1.5) and (1.8) and replacing $M$ by $N:=M /\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right), m \gg$ 1, we may assume that $\left(\begin{array}{lll}\dot{M} & x_{1}\end{array}\right)=0$. Note that $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=$ $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid N\right)$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& 0 \leq \ell_{R}\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)-\ell_{R}\left(N /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right) \\
& =l\left(\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right)+\left(x_{\ell}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M=\ell\left(\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right) /\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right)\right.\right. \\
& \left.\quad \cap\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right) \leq l\left(\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right) /\left(x_{2}^{n_{2}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right)\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right)\right) \\
& \quad \leq n_{M} \\
& \quad \leq n_{2} \cdots n_{d} l\left(\left(\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right) /\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) .\left(0: x_{1}^{m}\right)\right)=n_{2} \ldots n_{d} C,\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

where $C$ is a positive integer which is independent of $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{d}$.
Thus we get

$$
\begin{gathered}
0 \leq \frac{l\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)-l\left(N /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right)}{n_{1} n_{2} \cdots n_{d}} \leq C / n_{1} \\
\text { i.e., } \lim _{\min \left(n_{i}\right) \rightarrow \infty} l\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)=\lim _{\min \left(n_{i}\right) \rightarrow \infty} l\left(N /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

This shows that we may assume $\left(0: x_{1}\right)=0$. Now by (1.12),

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 \leq n_{1} \cdots n_{d} e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) & \leq l\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right) \\
& \leq n_{1} l\left(M /\left(x_{1}, x_{2}^{n_{2}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right) \\
& \left.=n_{1} l\left(\bar{M} / x_{2}^{n_{2}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) \bar{M}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $\bar{M}=M / x_{1} M$. Therefore, by induction, it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) \\
& \leq \lim _{\min \left(n_{i}\right) \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)}{n_{1} n_{2} \cdots \cdot n_{d}} \\
& \leq \lim _{\min \left(n_{i}\right) \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(\bar{M} /\left(x_{2}^{n_{2}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)}{n_{2} \cdots \cdot n_{d}}=e_{R / x_{1}}\left(x_{2}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid \bar{M}\right) \\
& =e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) \text {, since }
\end{aligned}
$$

$\left(0: x_{1}\right)=0$. Thus we get

$$
\lim _{\min \left(n_{i}\right) \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)}{n_{1} \cdots \cdot n_{d}}=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) .
$$

In the next proposition, we will prove that the general multiplicity symbol is nothing but the multiplicity defined in (1.2) Now onwards, we assume that $R$ is semilocal noetherian.

## (1.17) The Limit Formula of Samuel

Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ be a system of parameters for $R$.

Assume that $q=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)$ is an ideal of definition in $R$. Then $e_{0}(q ; M)=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{l\left(M \mid q^{n} M\right)}{n^{d} / d!}=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)$.

For the proof of this formula, we need the following lemma.
(1.18) Lemma . Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $q=$ $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right.$ be an ideal of definition generated by a system of parameters $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right\}$ for $R$. Then

$$
e_{0}(q ; M)=e_{g r_{q}}(R)\left(\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d} \mid g r_{q}(M)\right)
$$

Proof. We put $A:=g r_{q}(R), N:=g r_{q}(M)$. By induction on $d$ we shall prove that $h_{0}(N)=e_{A}\left(\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d} \mid N\right)$. Suppose $d=0$, then $q=0, A=R$, $N=M$ and $h_{0}(N)=l_{R}(M)=\ell_{A}(N)=e_{A}(\cdot \mid N)$. Now suppose that $d=s+1, s \geq 0$ and the result holds for $d=s$. Then we have by induction

$$
\begin{aligned}
e_{A}\left(\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d} \mid N\right) & =e_{A / \bar{x}_{1}}\left(\bar{x}_{2}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d} \mid N / \bar{x}_{1} N\right)-e_{A / \bar{x}_{1}}\left(\bar{x}_{2}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d} \mid\left(0 \dot{\dot{N}}: \bar{x}_{1}\right)\right) \\
& =h_{0}\left(N / \bar{x}_{1} N\right)-h_{0}\left(\left(0 \underset{\dot{N}}{:} \bar{x}_{1}\right)\right)=h_{0}(N),
\end{aligned}
$$

see remark (ii) in (1.2) Also, it follows from the same remark (iii) that $\left.e_{0}(q ; M)=h_{0}\left(g r_{g}(M)\right)\right)=e_{g r_{q}(R)}\left(\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d} \mid g r_{q}(M)\right)$.

Proof of (1.17) First, we prove that

$$
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{l\left(M \mid q^{n} M\right)}{n^{d} / d!} \leq e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) .
$$

If $d=0$ then $q=0$ and $\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(M \mid q^{n} M\right)}{n^{d} / d!}=\ell(M)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)$.
Now suppose that $d \geq 1$ and put $\bar{M}=M / x_{1} M, \bar{R}=R / x_{1}, \bar{q}=q / x_{1}$.
The we have $\bar{M} / \bar{q}^{n} \bar{M}=M /\left(x_{1} M+q^{n} M\right)$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ell_{\bar{R}}\left(\bar{M} / \bar{q}^{n} M\right) & =\ell_{\bar{R}}\left(M / q^{n} M\right)-\ell\left(x_{1} M+q^{n} M / q^{n} M\right) \\
& =\ell\left(M / q^{n} M\right)-\ell\left(x_{1} M / x_{1} M \cap q^{n} M\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Now, it is easy to see that $x_{1} M / x_{1} M \cap q^{n} M=x_{1} M / x_{1}\left(q^{n} M \underset{\dot{M}}{:} x_{1}\right) \underset{\approx}{\stackrel{x_{1}}{\approx}}$ $M /\left(q^{n} M_{\dot{M}}^{:} x_{1}\right)$ is an isomorphism. Therefore we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ell_{\bar{R}}\left(\bar{M} / \bar{q}^{n} \bar{M}\right) & =l\left(M / q^{n} M\right)-l\left(M /\left(q^{n} M: x_{1}\right)\right) \geq l\left(M / q^{n} M\right)-l\left(M / q^{n-1} M\right) \\
& =H_{g r_{q}(R)}^{0}\left(g r_{q}(M), n-1\right) \text { for all } \mathrm{n} .
\end{aligned}
$$

Thus

$$
e_{0}(\bar{q} ; \bar{M})=\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(\bar{M} / \bar{q}^{n} M\right)}{n^{d-1} /(d-1)!} \geq e_{0}(q ; M)
$$

If $d \geq 2$, replacing $M$ by $\bar{M}, R$ by $\bar{R}, q$ by $\bar{q}$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e_{0}(q ; M) \leq e_{0}\left(q / x_{1} ; M / x_{1} M\right) \leq e_{0}\left(q /\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right), M /\left(x_{1}, x_{2}\right) M\right) \leq \cdots \\
& \leq e_{0}((0) ; M / q M)=\ell(M / q M)
\end{aligned}
$$

i.e., $\quad \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(M / q^{n} M\right)}{n^{d} / d!} \leq \ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) M\right)$.

Now, replacing $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ by $x_{1}^{p}, \ldots, x_{d}^{p}$, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(M / q^{n p} M\right)}{(n p)^{d} / d!} & \leq \lim _{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{p}, \ldots, x_{d}^{p}\right)^{n} M\right)}{(n p)^{d} / d!} \\
& \leq \frac{l\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{p}, \ldots, x_{d}^{p}\right)^{n} M\right)}{p^{d}} \text { for all } p \geq 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Hence $e_{0}(q ; M) \leq \lim _{p \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\ell\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{p}, \ldots, x_{d}^{p}\right) M\right)}{p^{d}}=e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)$ by (1.16) It remains to prove the reverse inequality. Let $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{d}$ be positive integers. Put $A=g r_{q}(R), N=g r_{q}(M)$ and $\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}$ be the image of $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ in $q / q^{2}$. Set $F:=\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M, K:=\underset{n \geq 0}{\otimes} q^{n} M \cap$ $\left(q^{n+1} M+F\right) / q^{n+1} M$ and $L=\left(\bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N$. Then it is clear that $K, L$ are graded $A$-submodules of $N, L \subset K$ and

$$
N / K=\underset{n \geq 0}{\oplus} q^{n} M / q^{n} M \cap\left(q^{n+1} M+F\right)=\underset{n \geq 0}{\oplus} q^{n} M+F / q^{n+1} M+F
$$

For $n \geq n_{1}+\cdots+n_{d}$, we have $q^{n} M \subset F$. Therefore we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\ell_{R}\left(M\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right) & =\sum_{n \geq 0} \ell_{R}\left(q^{n} M+F / q^{n+1} M+F\right) \\
& =\ell_{R}(N / K) \leq \ell_{R}(N / L)=\ell_{R}\left(N /\left(\bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

If $\left.\ell_{R}\left(N /\left(\bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right)=\ell_{A}\left(N / \bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) . N\right)$, then we get $\ell_{R}$ $\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right) \leq \ell_{A}\left(N /\left(\bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right)$ for arbitrary positive integers $n_{1}, \ldots, n_{d}$. Therefore, by (1.16) we get

$$
e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=\lim _{\min \left(n_{i}\right) \rightarrow \infty} \frac{l_{R}\left(M /\left(x_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, x_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)}{n_{1} \cdots \cdot n_{d}}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \leq \lim _{\min \left(n_{i}\right) \rightarrow \infty} \frac{e_{A}\left(N /\left(\bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right)}{n_{1} \cdots \cdots n_{d}} \\
& =e_{A}\left(\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d} \mid N\right)=e_{0}(q ; M)
\end{aligned}
$$

## by 1.18

Thus it is enough to prove that

$$
\left.\left.\ell_{R}\left(N / \bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right)=\ell_{A}\left(N / \bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) M\right)
$$

Put $I=\left(\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}\right) \cdot A$. Since every $A$-module is also $R$-module, it follows that $\left.\left.\ell_{A}\left(N / \bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right) \leq l_{R}\left(N / \bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N\right)$ and $l_{A}\left(\left(N / \bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N / I^{n} N\right) \leq l_{R}\left(\left(\bar{x}_{1}^{n_{1}}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}^{n_{d}}\right) N / I^{n} N\right)$, where $n \geq n_{1}+$ $\cdots n_{d}$.

Therefore it is enough to prove that

$$
\ell_{R}\left(N / I^{n} N\right)=\ell_{A}\left(N / I^{n} N\right)
$$

Since $\bar{x}_{1}, \ldots, \bar{x}_{d}$ annihilates $I^{i} N / I^{i+1} N$, it follows that $l_{R}\left(I^{i} N / I^{i+1} N\right)$ $=l_{A}\left(I^{i} N / I^{i+1} N\right)$ for all $i \geq 0$. Therefore we get $l_{R}\left(N / I^{n} N\right)=\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} l_{R}$ $\left(I^{i} N / I^{i+1} N\right)=\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \ell_{A}\left(I^{i} N / I^{i+1} N\right)=\ell_{A}\left(N / I^{n} N\right)$.

This completes the proof of (1.17)
(1.19) Corollary . Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and$\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)=q \subset R$ be an ideal of definition generated by a system of parameters for $R$. Then

$$
e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=0 \Longleftrightarrow K-\operatorname{dim}(M)<\operatorname{dim}(R)=d .
$$

In particular, $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid R\right)>0$.
(1.20) Corollary. Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $q=$ $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right), q^{\prime}=\left(x_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, x_{d}^{\prime}\right)$ be ideals of definitions generated by systems of parameters for $R$. Then
(i) If $q^{\prime} \subset q$, then $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right) \leq e_{R}\left(x_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, x_{d}^{\prime} \mid M\right)$ and
(ii) If $q^{\prime}=q$, then $e_{R}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \mid M\right)=e_{R}\left(x_{1}^{\prime}, \ldots, x_{d}^{\prime} \mid M\right)$.
(1.21) Corollary . Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $q=$ $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)$ be an ideal of definition generated by a system of parameters for $R$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e_{0}(q ; M)=l(M / q M)-\ell\left(\left(q_{d-1} M \underset{\dot{M}}{ } x_{d}\right) / q_{d-1} M\right) \\
&-\sum_{k=l}^{d-1} e_{0}\left(q / q_{k},\left(q_{k-1} 0 \dot{\dot{M}} x_{k}\right) / q_{k-l} M\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
q_{k}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right), 0 \leq k \leq d-1 .
$$

Proof. This follows from remark (1.4)(i) and (1.17).
(1.22) Corollary. Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $q=$ $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) \subset R$ be any ideal of definition generated by a system of parameters $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right\}$ for $R$. Then $e_{0}(q ; M)=\ell(M / q M)-\ell\left(\left(q_{d-1}: x_{d}\right)\right.$ $\left.q_{d-1} M\right)$ if and only if $x_{k}$ is not in any prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}$ belonging to Ass $\left(M / q_{k-1} M\right)$ such that $K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y} \geq d-k$, where $q_{k}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right), 0 \leq$ $k \leq d-1$.

Proof. It is easy to see that

$$
\operatorname{Ass}\left(\left(q_{k-1}: x_{M}\right) / q_{k-1} M\right)=\operatorname{Ass}\left(M / q_{k-1} M\right) \cap V\left(\left(x_{k}\right)\right)
$$

Therefore we get

$$
\left.K-\operatorname{dim}\left(q_{k-1} M: x_{k}\right) / q_{k-1} M\right)=\operatorname{Sup}_{\mathscr{Y}_{i} \in A s s\left(M / q_{k-1} M\right) \cap V\left(\left(x_{k}\right)\right)} K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y}_{i}<d-k
$$

if and only if $x_{k} \notin \mathscr{Y}$ for all $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(M / q_{k-1} M\right)$ with $K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y} \geq$ $d-k$.

Therefore by (1.19), we get $e_{0}\left(q / q_{k} ;\left(q_{k-1} M: x_{k}\right) / q_{k-1} M\right)=0$ if and only if $x_{k} \notin \mathscr{Y}$ for all $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(M / q_{k-1} M\right)$ with $K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y} \geq d-k$. Now (1.22) follows from (1.21.
(1.23) Definition. (see [2]). Let $M$ be a finitely generated $R$-module. A set of elements $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \in \operatorname{Rad}(R)$ is said to be a reducing system of parameters with respect to $M$ if
(a) $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right\}$ is system of parameters for $R$
(b) $e_{0}(q ; M)=\ell(M / q M)-\ell\left(\left(q_{d-1} M:_{M} x_{d}\right) / q_{d-1} M\right)$ where $q=\left(x_{1}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.x_{d}\right)$ and $q_{d-1}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d-1}\right)$.

The following propositions are useful for the computation of the multiplicity
(1.24) Proposition. Let $M$ be any finitely generated $R$-module and $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)=q \subset R$ be an ideal generated by a system of parameters $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ for $R$. Then $q$ can be generated by a reducing system of parameters with respect to $M$.

Proof. By (1.22), it is enough to prove that $x_{k} \notin \mathscr{Y}$ for all $\mathscr{Y} \in$ Ass $\left(M / q_{k-1} M\right)$ such that $K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y} \geq d-k$, where $q_{k}=\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{k}\right), 0 \leq$ $k \leq d-1$.

Let $i$ be an integer with $1 \leq i \leq d$. Suppose that there exist elements $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i-l}$ such that $q=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i-l}, x_{i}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)$ and $y_{j} \notin \mathscr{Y}$ for all $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(M /\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{j-l}\right) M\right)$ with $K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y} \geq d-j$, for any $j=$ $1, \ldots, i-1$.

We set $q=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i-l}, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)$. It is clear that $q \subset m q+q_{i}$, where $m=\operatorname{rad}(R)$. Hence there is an element $y_{i} \in q$ such that $y_{i} \notin m q+q_{i}$ and $y_{i} \notin \mathscr{Y}$ for any $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(M /\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i-1}\right) M\right)$ with $R / \mathscr{Y} \geq d-i$ Since $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i-1}, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_{d}$ are linearly independent $\bmod m, q$, Nakayama's lemma implies $q=\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{i}, x_{i+1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right)$.
(1.25) Proposition. Let $(R, \mathscr{M})$ be a noetherian local ring and $q=$ $\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right) \subset R$ be an ideal generated by a system of parameters $\left(x_{1}\right.$, $\left.\ldots, x_{d}\right)$ for $R$. Then we put $\mathscr{O}_{0}:=(0)$ and $\mathscr{O}_{k}:=U\left(\mathscr{O}_{k-1}\right)+\left(x_{k}\right)$ for any $0<k<d$. Then $e_{0}(q ; R)=l\left(R / \mathscr{O}_{d}\right)$.

Proof. From the proof of (1.9), we have

$$
e_{0}(q ; R)=e_{0}\left(q / x_{1} ; R /\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right)\right)
$$

for large $n$. Proof by induction on $d$. Let $d=1$. Then it is clear that
$\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)=U(0)$ for large $n$ and $e_{0}\left(\left(x_{1}\right) ; R\right)=\ell\left(R /\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right)\right)=$ $\ell\left(R /\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+U(0)\right)\right)=\ell(R / \mathscr{U})$.

Now suppose that $d=s+1, s \geq 1$ and the result holds for $d=s$. First we shall show that $U\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right)=U\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+U(0)\right)$ for large $n$. Let $\mathscr{Y} \in V\left(\left(x_{1}\right)\right)$ be such that $K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y}=d-1$. Then it is easy to see that, for large $n$

$$
\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(R /\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right)\right) \Longleftrightarrow \mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(R /\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+U(0)\right)\right)
$$

Moreover, $\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right) \mathscr{Y}=\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+U(0)\right)_{\mathscr{Y}}$ for any $\mathscr{Y} \in$ Ass $\left(R /\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right)\right)=\operatorname{Ass}\left(R /\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+U(0)\right)\right)$ with $K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y}=$ $d-1$.

Therefore $U\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right)=U\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+U(0)\right)$ for larger $n$
Put $R^{\prime}:=R /\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)$ for large $n, \mathscr{O} 1=(0)$ and $\mathscr{O}_{k}=\left(x_{k}\right)+$ $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{k-1}\right.$ for any $1<k \leq d$. Then by induction we get $e_{0}(q ; R)=$ $e_{0}\left(q^{\prime} ; R^{\prime}\right)=\ell\left(R^{\prime} / \mathcal{U}\right)$. Now, since $\mathscr{O}=U(0)+\left(x_{1}\right)$, it follows that
$U(\mathscr{O})=U\left(U(0)+U\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right.\right.$ and $\mathscr{O}_{d}^{\prime}=\mathscr{O}_{d} /\left(\left(x_{1}\right)+\left(0: x_{1}^{n}\right)\right)$ for large $n$. Therefore $e_{0}(q ; R)=e_{0}\left(q^{\prime} ; R^{\prime}\right)=\ell\left(R^{\prime} / \mathscr{O}^{\prime} d\right)=\ell(R / \mathscr{O} d)$.
(1.26) Example. Take the classical example from [[90], §11] ( see also [[26], p. 180] and [[50], p. 126]).

Let $V_{1}, V_{2}$ and $C$ be the subvarieties of $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{4}$ with defining prime ideals:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathscr{Y}_{v_{1}}=\left(X_{1} X_{4}-X_{2} X_{3}, X_{1}^{2} X_{3}-X_{2}^{3}, X_{1} X_{3}^{2}-X_{2}^{2} X_{4}, X_{2} X_{4}^{2}-X_{3}^{3}\right), \\
& \mathscr{V}_{v_{1}}=\left(X_{1}, X_{4}\right) \text { and } \mathscr{Y}_{\mathscr{C}}=\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}, X_{4}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

We put $A\left(V_{1} ; C\right):=A:=\left(K\left[\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}, X_{4}\right] / \mathscr{Y}_{v_{1}}\right) \mathscr{Y}_{c}\right.$.
Then $\mathscr{Y}_{\nu_{2}} \cdot A=\left(X_{1}, X_{4}\right) A$ is generated by a system of parameters $X_{1}, X_{4}$ for $A$ and

$$
\mathscr{Y}_{v_{2}}+\left(X_{1}\right)=\left(X_{1}, X_{2} X_{3}, X_{2}^{2}, X_{2} X_{4}^{2}-X_{3}^{3}\right) \cap\left(X_{1}, X_{2}^{3}, X_{3}, X_{4}\right)
$$

is a primary decomposition of $\mathscr{Y}_{v_{1}}+\left(X_{1}\right)$ in $A$. Therefore $U\left(\mathscr{Y}_{v_{2}}+\left(X_{1}\right)\right)=$ $\left(X_{1}, X_{2} X_{3}, X_{2}^{2}, X_{2} X_{4}^{2}-X_{3}^{3}\right)$. It follows from (1.25) that

$$
e_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{v_{2}} A ; A\right)=\ell\left(A /\left(x_{4}\right)+U\left(\mathscr{Y}_{v_{1}}+\left(X_{1}\right)\right)\right)
$$

$$
=\ell\left(A /\left(X_{1}, X_{4}, X_{2}^{2}, X_{2} X_{3}, X_{3}^{2}\right) A\right)=4
$$

Also, $\ell\left(A / \mathscr{Y}_{v_{2}}\right)=\ell\left(A\left(X_{1}, X_{4}, X_{2} X_{3}, X_{2}^{3}, X_{3}^{3}\right) A\right)=5$. Therefore in this example the inequality in (1.9) is a strict inequality, i.e., $e_{0}\left(A / \mathscr{Y}_{v_{2}} A ; A\right)$ $<l\left(A /\left(\mathscr{Y}_{v_{2}}\right)\right.$.

## C. The HILBERT Function and the Degree

(1.27) Notation. The following notation will be used in sequel.

Let $K$ be a field and $R:=K\left[X_{O}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be the polynomial ring in $(n+1)$-variables over $K$. Let $V(n+1, t)$ denote the $K$-vector space consisting all forms of degree $t$ in $X_{O}, \ldots, X_{n}$. It is easy to see that $\operatorname{dim}_{K} V(n+1, t)=\binom{t+n}{n}$, for all $t \geq 0, n \geq 0$.

Let $I \subset R$ be a homogeneous ideal. Let $V(I, t)$ be the $K$-vector space consisting of all forms in $V(n+1, t)$ which are contained in $I$.
(1.28) Definition. The numerical function $H(I,-): \mathbb{Z}^{+} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}^{+}$defined by $H(I, t)=\operatorname{dim}_{K} V(n+1, t)-\operatorname{dim}_{K} V(I, t)$ is called the Hilbert function of I.

## General properties of the HILBERT function

Let $I, J \subset R$ be two homogeneous ideals.
(1.29)
(i) If I $\subset J$ then $H(I, t) \geq H(J, t)$ for all $t \geq 0$.
(ii) $H(I+J, t)=H(I, t)+H(J, t)-H(I \cap J, t)$ for all $t \geq 0$.

Proof. Since $V(I, t) \leq V(J, t)$ if $I \subset J$ and $V(I+J, t)=V(I, t)+V(J, t)-$ $V(I \cap J, t)$ for all $t \geq 0$, (i) and (ii) are clear.

Let $\varphi \varepsilon R$ be a form of degree $r$. Then
(1.30)
(i)

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(\varphi R, t) & =H((0), t)-H((0), t-r) \\
& =\binom{t+n}{n}-\binom{t-r+n}{n} \text { for } t \geq r-n \\
& =\binom{t+n}{n} \text { for } 0 \leq t \leq r-n
\end{aligned}
$$

(ii)

$$
\begin{aligned}
H(I \cap \varphi R, t) & =H(\varphi R, t)+H(I: \varphi), t-r) \\
& =H(\varphi R, t)+H(I, t-r) \text { if }(I: \varphi)=I \\
H(I+\varphi R, t) & =H(I, t)-H(I: \varphi), t-r) \\
& =H(I, t)-H(I: t-r) \text { if }(I: \varphi)=I
\end{aligned}
$$

In particular, $\quad H((0), t)=\binom{t+n}{n}$

$$
H((1), t)=0 \text { for all } t \geq 0
$$

Proof. It is easy to see that $I \cap \varphi R=(I: \varphi) \cdot \varphi R$. Therefore we get

$$
\operatorname{dim}_{K} V(I \cap \varphi R, t)=\operatorname{dim}_{K} V(I: \varphi, t-r)
$$

In particular (take $I=R), \operatorname{dim}_{K} V(I \varphi R, t)=\operatorname{dim}_{K}(R, t-r)$. From this and (1.29) all (i),(ii), (iii) are clear.

## (1.31)

Let $\mathscr{Y} \subset R$ be a homogeneous prime ideal with $K-\operatorname{dim} R / \mathscr{Y}=1$ If $K$ is algebraically closed, then $\mathscr{Y}$ is generated by $n$ linear forms and
(i) $H(\mathscr{Y}, t)=1$ for all $t \geq 0$
(ii) For any $r>0, H\left(\mathscr{Y}^{r}, t\right)=1+\binom{n}{l}+\binom{n+1}{2}+\cdots+\binom{n+r-2}{r-1}=\binom{n+r-2}{r-1}$

Proof. We may assume that $X_{0} \notin \mathscr{Y}$. Consider the ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{*}=\left\{f_{*} \mid f(1\right.$, $\left.\left.X_{1} / X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n} / X_{0}\right), f \in \mathscr{Y}\right\} \subset K\left[X_{1} / X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n} / X_{0}\right]$. It is easy to see that this is a maximal ideal in $K\left[X_{1} / X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n} / X_{0}\right]$. Therefore, by Hilbert's Nullstellensatz, there exist $a_{1}, \ldots, a_{n} \in K$ such that $\mathscr{Y}_{*}=$ $\left(X_{1} / X_{0}-a_{1}, \ldots, X_{n} / X_{0}-a_{n}\right)$. Now it is easy to see that $\mathscr{Y}=\left(X_{1}-\right.$ $\left.a_{1} X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}-a_{n} X_{0}\right)$. To calculate $H(\mathscr{Y}, t)$ and $H\left(\mathscr{Y}^{r}, t\right)$, we may assume that $\mathscr{Y}=\left(X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}\right)$ Then it is clear that $H(\mathscr{Y}, t)=1$ for all $t \geq 0$ and since $\mathscr{Y}^{r}$ is generated by forms of degree $r$ in $X_{1}, \ldots, X_{n}$ it follows that

$$
\begin{aligned}
H\left(\mathscr{Y}^{r}, t\right) & =\sum_{k=0}^{r-1}\left(\text { forms of degree } k \text { in } x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right) \\
& =\sum_{k=0}^{r-1}\binom{n+k-1}{k}=\binom{n+r-1}{r-1}
\end{aligned}
$$

The following is a well-known theorem (for proof see [26], [55] or [72]).

## (1.32) HILBERT-SAMUEL Theorem

Let $I \subset R$ be a homogeneous ideal. The Hilbert function $H(I, t)$, for large $t$ is a polynomial $P(I, t)$ in $t$ with coefficients in $Q$. The degree $d(0 \leq d \leq n)$ of this polynomial $P(I, t)$ is called the projective dimension or dimension of $I$ and we will denote it by $\operatorname{dim}(I)$. It is well-known that $\operatorname{dim}(I)=K-\operatorname{dim}(I)-1$. We will write the polynomial $P(I, t)$ in the following form:

$$
P(I, t)=h_{0}(I)\left({ }_{d}^{t}\right)+h_{1}\left({ }_{d-1}^{t}\right)+\cdots+h_{d},
$$

where $h_{0}(I)>0, h_{1}, \ldots, h_{d}$ are integers.
(1.33) Definition. (a) Let $I \subset R$ be a homogeneous ideal. The positive integer $h_{0}(I)$ is called the degree of $I$.
(b) Let $V=V(I) \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ be a projective variety in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by a homogeneous ideal $I \subset R$. Then $K-\operatorname{dim}(I)($ resp. $\operatorname{dim}(I)$, degree of I$)$ is called the Krull-dimension of $V$ (resp. The dimension of $V$, the degree of $V)$ and we denote it by $K-\operatorname{dim}(V)(r e s p . \operatorname{dim}(V), \operatorname{deg}(V))$. $V$ is called pure dimensional or unmixed if $I$ is unmixed.
(1.34) Remark. In general, the degree of $V$ is to be the number of points in which almost all linear subspaces $L^{n-\operatorname{dim}(V)} \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ meet $V$. By combining this geometric definition with a variant of the Hilbert polynomial, we can give our purely algebraic definition of $\operatorname{deg}(V)$ and open the way to the deeper study of this properties (see [50, Theorem (6.25) on $\mathrm{p} .112 \mathrm{]}$ ).

## Some properties of the degree.

(1.35)

Let $\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s} \in R$ be forms of degrees $r_{1}, \ldots, r_{s}$, respectively. If $\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{i-1}\right): \varphi_{i}\right)=\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{i-1}\right)$ for any $1 \leq i \leq s$ then

$$
h_{0}\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s}\right)\right)=r_{1} \ldots . . r_{s}
$$

Proof. Proof by induction on $s$. Suppose $s=1$. Then by (1.30)(i) we have $\left.H\left(\left(\varphi_{1}\right), t\right)=\binom{t+n}{n}-\binom{n+r-n}{n^{1}}=r_{1}\binom{t}{n-1}\right)+\cdots$ for all $t \geq r_{1}-n$.

Therefore $h_{0}\left(\left(\varphi_{1}\right)\right)=r_{1}$. Now suppose $s=p+1, p \geq 1$ and result 47 holds for $r=p$. Since $\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right): \varphi_{s}\right)=\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right)$ by (1.30) (iii) we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
H\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s}\right), t\right)=H\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right), t\right)-H\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right), t-r_{s}\right) \\
=h_{0}\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right)\right)\binom{t}{n-s+1}+\cdots-h_{0}\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right)\right)\binom{t-r_{s}}{n-s+1} \cdots \\
=r_{s}-h_{0}\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right)\right)(\underset{n-s}{t})+\cdots \text { for all } t \geq r_{s}-n .
\end{gathered}
$$

Therefore, by induction, we get $h_{0}\left(\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s}\right)\right)=r_{s} \cdot h_{0}\left(\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right)=$ $r_{1}, \ldots r_{s}$.
(1.36)

Let $I \subset R$ be a homogeneous ideal and $\varphi \in R$ be a form of degree $r$. Then
(i) If $\operatorname{dim}(I, \varphi)=\operatorname{dim}(I)=\operatorname{dim}(I: \varphi)$ then $h_{0}(I, \varphi)=h_{0}(I)-h_{0}(I$ : $\varphi)$ ).
(ii) If $\operatorname{dim}(I, \varphi)=\operatorname{dim}(I)>\operatorname{dim}(I: \varphi)$ then $h_{0}(I, \varphi)=h_{0}(I)$.
(iii) If $(I: \varphi)=I$, then $h_{0}(I, \varphi)=r \cdot h_{0}(I)$.

Proof. This follows from (1.30)

## (1.37)

Let $I \subset R$ be a homogeneous ideal. Then

$$
h_{0}(I)=h_{0}(U(I))
$$

Proof. Suppose $\operatorname{dim}(I)=d$. We may assume that $I \nsubseteq \subset U(I)$. Then we have $I=U(I) \cap J$ where $J \subset R$ is a homogeneous ideal with $\operatorname{dim}(J)<$ $\operatorname{dim}(U)=\operatorname{dim}(I)=d$. Therefore from (1.29) (ii), we get $h_{0}(I)=$ $h_{0}(U(I))$.

## (1.38)

$48 \quad$ Let $\mathscr{Y} \subset R$ be a homogeneous prime ideal and $q \subset R$ be a homogeneous $\mathscr{Y}$-primary ideal. Then

$$
h_{0}(q)=l(q) \cdot h_{0}(\mathscr{Y}) .
$$

Proof. Let $q=q_{1} \subset q_{2} \subset \cdots \subset q_{\ell}=\mathscr{Y}$ be a composition series for $q$. It is enough to prove that

$$
h_{0}\left(q_{i}\right)=h_{0}\left(q_{i+1}\right)+h_{0}(\mathscr{Y}) \text { for any } 1 \leq i \leq \ell-2 .
$$

We assume $i=1$. There exist forms $\varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s}$ such that $q_{2}=$ $\left(q_{1}, \varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s}\right)$. By using remark in (1.1) to the $\mathscr{Y} R_{\mathscr{Y}}$ - primary ideal $q R_{\mathscr{Y}} \subset R_{\mathscr{Y}}$, it follows the $\mathscr{Y} \varphi_{i} \subset q_{1}$ for all $\mathrm{i}=1, \ldots, s$ and there exist forms $\alpha_{i}$ and $\beta_{i}, 2 \leq i \leq r$ such that
(i) $\beta_{i} \notin \mathscr{Y}$ for all $2 \leq i \leq s$.
(ii) $\alpha_{i} \varphi_{i}-\beta_{i} \varphi_{1} \in q_{1}$ for all $2 \leq i \leq s$

Therefore $\left(q_{1}: \varphi_{1}\right)=\mathscr{Y}$ and since $\mathscr{Y} \subset\left(\left(q_{1} \varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{i}\right): \varphi_{i+1}\right)$ the homogeneous ideals $\left(\left(q_{1} \varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{i}\right): \varphi_{i+1}\right)$ have dimension $<d$, for any $1 \leq i \leq s-1$. Therefore from (1.36) (i), (1.36) (ii), we get $h_{0}\left(q_{2}\right)=$ $h_{0}\left(\left(q_{1} \varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-1}\right)=h_{0}\left(\left(q_{1} \varphi_{1}, \ldots, \varphi_{s-2}\right)=\cdots=h_{0}\left(q_{1}\right)-h_{0}(\mathscr{Y})\right.\right.$.

## (1.39)

Let $\mathscr{Y}_{1} \neq \mathscr{Y}_{2}$ be two homogeneous ideals in $R$ and let $q_{i}$ be two homogeneous $\mathscr{Y}_{i^{-}}$primary ideals for $i=1,2$ If $\operatorname{dim} q_{1}=\operatorname{dim} q_{2}$ then $h_{0}\left(q_{1} \cap q_{2}\right)=h_{0}\left(q_{1}\right)+h_{0}\left(q_{2}\right)$.

Proof. Since $\mathscr{Y}_{1} \neq \mathscr{Y}_{2}$, it follows that $\operatorname{dim}\left(q_{1}+q_{2}\right)<\operatorname{dim} q_{1}=\operatorname{dim} q_{2}$. Therefore, from (1.29)(ii), we have

$$
h_{0}\left(q_{1} \cap q_{2}\right)=h_{0}\left(q_{1}\right)+h_{0}\left(q_{2}\right)
$$

## (1.40)

Let $I \subset R$ be a homogeneous ideal. Then

$$
h_{0}(I)=h_{0}(U(I))=\sum l(q) \cdot h_{0}(\mathscr{Y})
$$

where $q$ runs through all $\mathscr{Y}$-primary components of $I$ with $\operatorname{dim}(q)=$ $\operatorname{dim}(I)$.

Proof. This follows from (1.37) (1.39) and (1.38)

## (1.41)

Let $\bar{I} \subset K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n-1}\right]$ be a homogeneous ideal of dimension $d$ with the Hilbert function $H(\bar{I}, t)=h_{0}\left({ }_{d}^{t}\right)+h_{1}\left({ }_{d-1}^{t}\right)+\cdots h_{d}$ for $t \gg 1$. Let $I^{*} \subset$ $K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be the homogeneous ideal generated by $\bar{I} \operatorname{Then} \operatorname{dim}\left(I^{*}\right)=$ $\operatorname{dim}(I)+1=d+1$ and the Hilbert function of $I^{*}$ is given by

$$
H\left(I^{*}, t\right)=h_{0}\left({ }_{d+1}^{t}\right)+\left(h_{0}+h_{1}\right)\left({ }_{d}^{t}\right)+\cdots+\left(h_{d}+h_{d}+1\right) \text { for } t \gg 1 .
$$

Proof. Every form $\varphi \in I^{*}$ of degree $t$ can be written uniquely in the form

$$
\varphi=\varphi_{t}+\varphi_{t-1} X_{n}+\cdots+X_{n}^{t}
$$

where $\varphi_{t}, \varphi_{t-1}, \ldots$ are forms of degrees $t, t-1, \ldots$ in $\bar{I}$.
Therefore $V\left(I^{*}, t\right)=\sum_{k=0}^{t} V(\bar{I}, k)$ and hence

$$
\begin{aligned}
H\left(I^{*}, t\right) & \left.=\binom{t+n}{n}-\sum_{k=0}^{t}\left[\binom{t+n}{n-1}\right)-H(\bar{I}, k)\right] \\
& \left.=\sum_{k=0}^{t} H(\bar{I}, k), \text { since } \sum_{k=0}^{t}\binom{t+n}{n-1}\right)=\binom{t+n}{n} \\
& =h_{0} \sum_{k=0}^{t}\binom{k}{d}+h_{1} \sum_{k=0}^{t}\binom{k}{d-1}+\cdots+h_{d} \sum_{k=0}^{t}\binom{k}{0} \\
& =h_{0}\binom{t+l}{d+l}+h_{1}\binom{t+1}{d}+\cdots+h_{d}\binom{t+1}{l} \\
& =h_{0}\binom{t}{d+1}+\left(h_{0}+h_{1}\right)\binom{t}{d}+\cdots+\left(h_{d-1}+h_{d}\right)\binom{t}{l}+\left(h_{d}+h_{d+1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(1.42)

Let $I \subset K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$ be a homogeneous ideal of dimension $d(0 \leq d \leq$ $n-1)$. Put $\bar{I}=I \cap K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n-1}\right]$
$I_{1}=\left\{\varphi \in K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n-1}\right] \mid \varphi_{i}\right.$ is a form such that $\varphi_{0}+\varphi_{1} X_{n} \in I$ for some form $\left.\varphi \in K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n-1}\right]\right\}$
$I_{1}=\left\{\varphi_{i} \in K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n-1}\right] \mid \varphi_{i}\right.$ is a form and $\varphi_{0}+\varphi_{1} X_{n}+\cdots+\varphi_{i} X_{n}^{i} \in I$ for some forms $\left.\varphi_{0}, \ldots, \varphi_{i-1} \in K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n-1}\right]\right\}$ for $i \geq 1$.

Then it is clear that

$$
\bar{I} \subset I_{1} \subset I_{2} \subset \cdots \subset I_{r}=I_{r+1}=\ldots \text { for some } r \geq 1
$$

Therefore, we get

$$
\operatorname{dim} V(I, t)=\operatorname{dim} V(I, t)+\sum_{k=1}^{t} \operatorname{dim} V\left(I_{k}, t-k\right) \text { for all } t \geq 0
$$

and hence

$$
H(I, T)=\binom{t+n}{n}-\binom{t+n-1}{n-1}+H(\bar{I}, t)-\sum_{k=1}^{t}\left[\binom{t+n-1}{n-1}-H\left(I_{k}, t-k\right)\right]
$$

$$
=H(\bar{I}, t)-\sum_{k=1}^{t} H\left(I_{k}, t-k\right) \text { for all } t \geq 0
$$

(1.43) Example. (i) Let $\mathscr{Y}$ be the prime ideal
$\left(X_{0} X_{2}-X_{1}^{2}, X_{1} X_{2}-X_{0} X_{3}, X_{2}^{2}-X_{1} X_{3}\right) \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$.
Following the notation of (1.42) it is easy to see that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \overline{\mathscr{Y}}=\left(X_{0} X_{2}-X_{1}^{2}\right) \\
& \mathscr{Y}_{1}=\mathscr{Y}_{2}=\ldots\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore, by (1.35) we get
$H(\overline{\mathscr{Y}}, t)=2 t+1$ and $H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}, t\right)=H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}, t\right)=\cdots=1$ for all $t \geq 0$.
Hence by (1.42)

$$
H(\mathscr{Y}, t)=H(\overline{\mathscr{Y}}, t)+\sum_{k=0}^{t} H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{k}, t-k\right)=3 t+1
$$

Therefore $h_{0}(\mathscr{Y})=3$
(ii) Let $\mathscr{Y}$ be the prime ideal $\left(X_{0} X_{2}-X_{1}^{2}, X_{2}^{2}-X_{0} X_{3}\right) \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}\right.$, $\left.X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$. Then $\overline{\mathscr{Y}}=\left(X_{0} X_{2}-X_{1}^{2}\right), H(\mathscr{\mathscr { Y }}, t)=2 t+1$, for all $t \geq 0$. $\mathscr{Y}_{1}=\mathscr{Y}_{2}=\ldots=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}^{2}\right)$,

$$
H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}, t\right)=H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}, t\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
1 \text { for } t=0 \\
2 \text { for all } t \geq 1
\end{array}\right.
$$

Therefore, by (1.42) we get

$$
H(\mathscr{Y}, t)=H(\overline{\mathscr{Y}}, t)+\sum_{k=0}^{t} H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{k}, t-k\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
1 \text { for } t=0 \\
4 t \text { for all } t \geq 1
\end{array}\right.
$$

Hence $h_{0}(\mathscr{Y})=4$.
(iii) Let $\mathscr{Y}$ be the prime ideal $\left(X_{0}^{2} X_{2}-X_{1}^{3}, X_{0} X_{3}-X_{1} X_{2}, X_{0} X_{2}^{2} X_{1}^{2} X_{3}\right.$, $\left.X_{1} X_{2}^{3}-X_{2}^{3}\right) \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$
Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \overline{\mathscr{Y}}=\left(X_{0}^{2} X_{2}-X_{1}^{3}\right), H(\overline{\mathscr{Y}})=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
1 \text { for } t=0 \\
3 t \text { for all } t \geq 1 .
\end{array}\right. \\
& \mathscr{Y}_{1}=\left(X_{0} X_{1}^{2}\right), H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}, t\right)=\left\{\begin{array}{l}
1 \text { for } t=0 \\
2 \text { for all } t \geq 1
\end{array}\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

$\mathscr{Y}_{2}=\mathscr{Y}_{3}=\cdots=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right), H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}, t\right)=H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{3}, t\right)=\ldots=1$ for all $t \geq 0$. Therefore, by (1.42) we get

$$
H(\mathscr{Y}, t)=H(\overline{\mathscr{Y}}, t)+\sum_{k=0}^{t} H\left(\mathscr{Y}_{k}, t-k\right)= \begin{cases}1 & \text { for } t=0 \\ 4 & \text { for } t \geq 1 \\ 4 t+t & \text { for } t=\geq 2\end{cases}
$$

Hence $H_{0}(\mathscr{Y})=4$.
(iv) Let $\mathscr{Y} \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]=R$ be the prime ideal in example (iii) above and $\mathscr{Y}=\left(X_{1}, X_{4}\right) \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$.

Then $q:=\left(\mathscr{Y}+\mathscr{Y}^{\prime}\right)=\left(X_{0}, X_{3}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{1}^{3}, X_{2}^{3}\right)$ is $\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)$ primary ideal and it is easy to see that $l(R / q)=5$. Therefore, by (1.38) we have $h_{0}(q)=\ell(R / q) \cdot h_{0}\left(\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)\right)=5$ and from example (iii) $h_{0}(\mathscr{Y})=4$. This shows that

$$
5=h_{0}(q) \neq h_{0}(\mathscr{Y}) \cdot h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}^{\prime}\right)=4
$$

## D. Miscellaneous Results

53 Now we collect some results which will be used in the next sections. Let $K$ be a field.
(1.44) Proposition. Let $A$ be a finitely generated $K$-algebra. Then $U=\{\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Spec}(A) \mid A \mathscr{Y}$ is Cohen-Macaulay $\}$ is a non-empty Zariskiopen subset of $\operatorname{Spec}(A)$.

For the proof of this proposition, we need the following lemma.
(1.45) Lemma. Let $A$ be a finitely generated $K$-alegbra and $\mathscr{Y} \in$ $\operatorname{Spec}(A)$ If $A_{\mathscr{Y}}$ is Chone-Macaulay, then there exists a maximal ideal $m$ of $A$ containing $\mathscr{Y}$ such that $A_{\mathscr{M}}$ is Chone-Macaulay.

Proof. Proof by induction on $d:=\operatorname{dim}(A)$.

Case(i): ht $\mathscr{Y}=0$. In this case, $\mathscr{Y}$ is a minimal prime ideal of $A$. If $d=K-\operatorname{dim} A=o$, then there is nothing to prove. Now suppose that $d=s+1, s \geq 0$ and the result holds for $d=s$. Replacing $A$ by $A_{f}$ for some $f \notin \mathscr{Y}$, we may assume that Ass $(A)=\{\mathscr{Y}\}$ and $K-\operatorname{dim} A>O$. Then depth $(A)>0$. Let $x \in A$ be a non-zero- divisor in $A$ and $q$ be a minimal prime ideal of $x A$. Then by Krull's $P I D$ ht $q=1$ and hence $\mathscr{Y} \subset q$.

Put $A^{\prime}=A /(\mathrm{x})$ and $q^{\prime}=q A$. Then $A_{p}^{\prime}$ is Cohen Macaulay and $h t q^{\prime}=0$. Therefore, by induction, there exists a maximal ideal $\mathscr{M}^{\prime}$ of $A^{\prime}$ with $q^{\prime} \subset \mathscr{M}^{\prime}$ and $A^{\prime} m$ is Cohen-Macaulay. Then $\mathscr{M}=\mathscr{M}^{\prime} \cap A$ is a maximal ideal of $A$ containing $q \supset \mathscr{Y}$ and $A_{m}$ is Cohen-Macaulay.
Case (ii): ht $\mathscr{Y}=r>0$.
Since $A_{\mathscr{Y}}$ is Cohen-Macaulay of dimension $r$ there exist $x_{1}, \ldots x_{r}$ in $\mathscr{Y}$ such that $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots x_{r}\right\}$ is an $A \mathscr{Y}$ - sequence.

By replacing $A$ by $A_{f}$ for some $f \notin \mathscr{Y}$, we may assume that $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots x_{r}\right\}$ is an A-sequence and $\mathscr{Y}$ is a minimal prime ideal of $\left(x_{1}, \ldots x_{r}\right)$. Put $A^{\prime}=A /\left(x_{1}, \ldots x_{r}\right)$ and $\mathscr{Y}^{\prime}=\mathscr{Y} A^{\prime}$. Then ht $\mathscr{Y}^{\prime}=0$ and $A_{\mathscr{Y}}^{\prime}$, is Cohen-Macaulay; therefore, by case(i), there exists a maximal ideal $m^{\prime}$ of $A^{\prime}$ such that $m^{\prime} \supset \mathscr{Y}^{\prime}$ and $A_{m^{\prime}}$ is Cohen-Macaulay. Then $m=m^{\prime} \cap A$ is a maximal ideal of $A$ with $m \supset \mathscr{Y}$ and since $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots x_{r}\right\}$ is an A-sequence, it follows that $A_{\mathscr{M}}$ is Cohen-Macaulay.

Proof of Proposition (1.44). Clearly $U \neq \phi$. Let $\mathscr{Y} \in U$ shall show that there exists $f \notin \mathscr{Y}$ such that $D(f)=\{q \in \operatorname{Spec}(A) \mid f \notin q\} \subset$ $U$, that is, $A_{f}$ is Cohen-Macaulay for some $f \notin \mathscr{Y}$. By 1.45, we may assume that $\mathscr{Y}=\mathscr{M}$ is a maximal ideal of $A$. Replacing $A$ by $A_{f}$ for some $f \notin \mathscr{M}$ we may assume that Ass $(A)=\mathscr{Y}_{1}, \ldots, \mathscr{Y}_{r}$ with $\mathscr{Y}_{i} \subset m, i \leq i \leq r$. Since $A_{m}$ is Cohen- Macaulay, we have $d:=\mathrm{ht}$
$m=\operatorname{dim} A_{m}=\operatorname{dim}\left(A / \mathscr{Y}_{i}\right)_{m}$ for all $1 \leq i \leq r$. Therefore

$$
\operatorname{dim} A=\sup _{1 \leq i \leq r} \operatorname{dim} A / \mathscr{Y}_{i}=\sup _{1 \leq i \leq r} \operatorname{dim}\left(A / \mathscr{Y}_{i}\right) \cdot \mathscr{M}=d
$$

and there exist $x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d} \in m$ such that $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{d}\right\}$ is an $A_{m}$-sequence. Further, replacing $A$ by $A_{f}$ for some $f \notin m$, we may assume that $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.x_{d}\right\}$ is an $A$-sequence. This shows that $A$ is Cohen-Macaulay.

## (1.46) Proposition.

1. Let $L \mid K$ be a field extension. Let $I \subset K_{0}\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]=: R$ be a homogeneous ideal. Put $\bar{R}=L\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Then $h_{0}(I)=h_{0}(I \bar{R})$.
2. Let $A$ be a finitely generated $K$-algebra and $I \subset A$ be an unmixed ideal. Let $x \in A$ be such that $K-\operatorname{dim}(A /(I, x))=K-\operatorname{dim}(A / I)-1$. Then

$$
\operatorname{Rad}(U((I, x)))=\operatorname{Rad}(I, x)
$$

3. Let $V=V(I) \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ be a projective variety defined by the homogeneous ideal $I \subset K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]=: R$. Let $C$ be an irreducible subvariety of $V$ with the defining prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}$. Let $A=(R / I)_{\mathscr{Y}}$ be the local ring of $V$ at $C$. If $V$ is pure dimensional, then

$$
K-\operatorname{dim}(A)=K-\operatorname{dim}(V)-K-\operatorname{dim}(C)
$$

Proof. 1. Clear.
2. Put $d:=K-\operatorname{dim}(A / I)$. It is enough to prove that, for every minimal prime ideal $q$ of $(I, x)$

$$
K-\operatorname{dim}(A / q)=d-1
$$

Since $I$ is unmixed $d=K-\operatorname{dim}(A / I)=K-\operatorname{dim}(A / \mathscr{Y})$ for every $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}(A / I)$. Let $(I, x) \subset q \subset A$ be a minimal prime ideal of $(I, x)$. Then there exists a minimal prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}$ of $I$ such that $\mathscr{Y} \subsetneq q$ and by Krull's Principal Ideal Theorem, we have ht $q / \mathscr{Y}=1$. Therefore; since $A$ is a finitely generated $K$-algebra, we get

$$
K-\operatorname{dim} A / q=K-\operatorname{dim} A / \mathscr{Y}-h t q / \mathscr{Y}=d-1
$$

3. Let $I \subset q \subset R$ be a minimal prime ideal of $I$ such that $K-\operatorname{dim}$ $(R / q) \mathscr{Y}=K-\operatorname{dim}(A)$. Then, since $I$ is unmixed and $R / q$ is a finitely generated $K$-algebra, we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
K-\operatorname{dim}(V) & =K-\operatorname{dim} R / I=K-\operatorname{dim} R / q=K-\operatorname{dim}(R / \mathscr{Y}) \\
& +K-\operatorname{dim}(R / q) \mathscr{Y}=K-\operatorname{dim}(C)+K-\operatorname{dim}(A)
\end{aligned}
$$

(1.47) Proposition. Assume that $K$ is algebraically closed. Let $L \mid K$ and $L^{\prime} \mid K$ be field extensions and $A, B$ be finitely generated $K$-algebras. Then
(i) (a) $L \underset{K}{\otimes} L^{\prime}$ is an integral domain.
(b) $K-\operatorname{dim}(A \underset{K}{\otimes} B)=K$-dim $(A)+K$-dim $(B)$ and if $A$ and $B$ are integral domain then $A \underset{K}{\otimes} B$ is an integral domain.
(c) Put $A_{L}:=L \underset{K}{\otimes} A$. Then $K$-dim $A_{L}=K$-dim $A$ and if $A$ is an integral domain then $A_{L}$ is an integral domain.
(ii) There is a one-one correspondence between the isolated prime ideals of $A$ and the isolated prime ideals of $A_{L}=\underset{K}{L \otimes A}$ which preserves
K-dimensions.
(iii) (a) If $A$ is unmixed then $A_{L}=L \underset{K}{\otimes} A$ is unmixed.
(b) If $A$ and $B$ are unmixed then $A \underset{K}{\otimes} B$ is unmixed.
(iv) (a) If $A$ and $B$ are Cohen-Macaulay then $A \underset{K}{\otimes} B$ is Cohen-Macaulay.
(b) Let $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Spec}(A)$ and $q \in \operatorname{Spec}(B)$. If $A \mathscr{Y}$ and $B_{q}$ are CohenMacaulay then $A \underset{K}{\underset{Y}{\otimes}} B_{q}$ is Cohen-Macaulay.
Proof. (i) (a) We may assume that $L$ is finitely generated over $K$. Let $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\} \subset L$ be a separating transcendence basis of $L \mid K$ (since $K$ is algebraically closed it exists). Put $L_{1}:=K\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$. Then $L \mid L_{1}$ is separable and hence $L=L_{1}(\alpha)=L_{1}[x] /(f(x))$, where
$f(x)$ is the irreducible polynomial of over $L_{1}$. Sine $L_{1} \underset{K}{\otimes} L^{\prime} \simeq$ $S^{-1}\left(L^{\prime}\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]\right)$, where $S=K\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]-0, L_{1}{\underset{K}{*}}_{L^{\prime}}$ is an integral domain with quotient field $E=L^{\prime}\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$. Now, note that since $K$ is algebraically closed in $L^{\prime}$, it is easy to see that $L_{1}=E\left(x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right)$ is algebraically closed in $E$. Then $L \underset{K}{\otimes} L^{\prime}=$ $L \underset{L_{1}}{\otimes} L_{1} L_{1} \underset{L_{1}}{\otimes} L^{\prime} \supset L \underset{L_{1}}{\otimes} E=L_{1}[x] /(f(x)) \underset{L_{1}}{\otimes} E=E[x] /(f(x))$ is an integral domain.
(b) By Normalization Lemma, we have

$$
K-\operatorname{dim}(A \underset{K}{\otimes} B)=K-\operatorname{dim}(A)+K-\operatorname{dim}(B)
$$

Let $L$ (resp. $L^{\prime}$ ) be the quotient field of $A$ (resp. $B$ ).
Then $A \underset{K}{\otimes} B \subset L \underset{K}{\otimes} L^{\prime}$ which is an integral domain by $(a)$.
(c) Similar to (b).
(ii) Let $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Spec}(A)$. Then by (i) $(c) \mathscr{Y} A_{L} \in \operatorname{Spec}\left(A_{L}\right)$ and $K-$ $\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y})=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{Y} A_{L}\right)$. It is easy to see that $\mathscr{Y}$ is isolated if and only if $\mathscr{Y} A_{L}$ is isolated. Therefore $\mathscr{Y} \leftrightarrow \mathscr{Y} A_{L}$ is, as required $a 1-1$ correspondence.
(iii) (a) Let $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}(A)$. Then by $(i)(c) K-\operatorname{dim} \mathscr{Y} A_{L}=K-\operatorname{dim} \mathscr{Y}=$ $K-\operatorname{dim} A=K-\operatorname{dim} A_{L}$. Therefore it is enough to prove that Ass $\left(A_{L}\right)=\left\{\mathscr{Y} A_{L} \mid \mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}(A)\right\}$, which follows from (ii).
(b) Let $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}(A)$ and $q \in \operatorname{Ass}(B)$. Then by $(i i)(b)(\mathscr{Y}, q)$ is a prime ideal in $A \underset{K}{\otimes} B=: C$ and $K-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y}, q) C=K-\operatorname{dim} \mathscr{Y}+$ $K-\operatorname{dim} q=K-\operatorname{dim} A+K-\operatorname{dim} B=K-\operatorname{dim}(A \underset{K}{\otimes} B)$.
Therefore it is enough to prove that

$$
\operatorname{Ass}(C)=\{(\mathscr{Y}, q) \cdot C \mid \mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}(A), q \in(B)\}
$$

Let $P \in$ Ass $(C)$. Then since $C$ is flat over $A$ and $B$ it follows that $P \cap A=\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}(A)$ and $P \cap B=q \in \operatorname{Ass}(B)$.

By replacing $A$ by $A_{\mathscr{Y}}$ we may assume that $A$ is local with maximal ideal $\mathscr{Y} \in$ Ass $(A)$. Since $A$ is unmixed $A \mathscr{Y}$ is unmixed and therefore $A_{\mathscr{Y}}$ is artinian.
Now there exists a coefficient field $L$ of $A$ containing $K$ and $L \underset{K}{\otimes}$ $B \rightarrow A \otimes B$ is an integral extension. It follows from (a) that $B_{L}:=$ $L \underset{K}{\otimes} B$ is unmixed and by $(i i) q B_{L} \varepsilon \operatorname{Ass}\left(B_{L}\right)$. If $\left.(\mathscr{Y}, q) C \subsetneq P\right)$ then $q{ }_{q}^{K} B_{L} \subsetneq P \cap B_{L}$ because $B_{L} \rightarrow A \underset{K}{\otimes} B$ is an integral extension.
Since $A \underset{K}{\otimes} B$ is a free $B_{L}$-module it follows that $P \cap B_{L} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(B_{L}\right)$. This contradicts the fact that $B_{L}$ is unmixed. Therefore $P=(\mathscr{Y}, q)$ - C.
(iv) (a) Let $K-\operatorname{dim} A=r$ and $\mathrm{K}-\operatorname{dim} B=s$. Then we have $\mathrm{K}-$ $\operatorname{dim} A \underset{K}{\otimes} B=\mathrm{K}-\operatorname{dim} A+K-\operatorname{dim} B=r+s$. Let $\left\{a_{1}, \ldots, a_{r}\right\}$ (resp. $\left\{b_{1}, \ldots, b_{s}\right\}$ ) be an $A$-sequence (resp. $B$-sequence). Then, since $K$ is a field, it is easy to see that $\left\{a_{1} \otimes 1, \ldots, a_{r} \otimes 1, \otimes b_{1}, \ldots\right.$, $\left.1 \otimes b_{s}\right\}$ is an $(\underset{K}{\otimes} B)$-sequence of length $r+s$. Therefore $A \underset{K}{\otimes} B$ is Cohen-Macaulay.
(b) It is easy to see that $A_{\mathscr{Y}} \underset{K}{\otimes} B_{q} \xrightarrow{\sim} S^{-1}(A \underset{K}{\otimes} B)$, where $S$ is the multiplicative set $(A-\mathscr{Y}) \underset{K}{\otimes}(B-q)$ in $A{\underset{K}{\otimes} B \text {. By (1.44) there }}^{K}$. exist $f \in A-\mathscr{Y}$ and $g \in B^{K}-q$ such that $A_{f}$ and $B_{f}$ are CohenMacaulay. Therefore by (a) $A_{f} \underset{K}{\otimes} B_{g}$ is Cohen-Macaulay. Since $\left.A \mathscr{Y} \underset{K}{\otimes} B_{g} \xrightarrow{\sim} S^{-1} \underset{K}{\otimes} B\right)$ is a localization of $A_{f} \underset{K}{\otimes} B_{g}$ it follows that $A_{\mathscr{Y}} \underset{K}{\otimes} B_{g}$ is Cohen-Macaulay.

## Chapter 2

## The Main Theorem

IN THIS CHAPTER, we state and prove the Main Theorem. Throughout this chapter $K$ denotes an algebraically closed field and $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ the projective $n$-space over $K$.

## A. The Statement of the Main Theorem

## (2.1) Main theorem

Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional subvarieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. There exists a collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ (one of which may be $\phi$ ) such that
(i) For every $C_{i} \in\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ there are intersection numbers, say $j\left(V_{1}\right.$, $\left.V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \geq 1$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C_{i}$ given by the lengths of certain well-defined primary ideals such that

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{\left.C_{i} \in\left\{C_{i}\right]\right\}} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right),
$$

where we put $\operatorname{deg}(\phi)=1$.
(ii) If $C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ is an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ then $C_{i} \in$ $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$.
(iii) For every $C_{i} \in\left\{C_{i}\right\}$

$$
\operatorname{dim}\left(C_{i}\right) \geq \operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n .
$$

61 In order to prove the main theorem (2.1) we need some preliminary results.

## B. The Join-procedure

The following notation will be used in the sequel.
(2.2)

Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional subvarieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2} \subset R_{0}:=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots,\right]$.

We introduce two copies $R_{i}:=K\left[X_{i 0}, \ldots, X_{\text {in }}\right], i=1,2$ of $R_{0}$ and denote $I_{i}^{\prime}$ the homogeneous ideal in $R_{i}$ corresponding to $I_{i}, i=1,2$.

Put $N:=2(n+1)-1, R:=K\left[X_{i j} \mid i=1,2 ; 0 \leq n\right]$ and $\tau:=$ the diagonal ideal in $R$ generated by $\left\{X_{i j}-X_{2 j} \mid 0 \leq j \leq n\right\}$.

We introduce new independent variables $U_{k j}$ over $K, 0 \leq j, k \leq n$. Let $\bar{K}$ be the algebraic closure of $K\left(U_{k j} \mid 0 \leq j, k \leq n\right)$. Put $\bar{R}:=\bar{K}\left[X_{i j} \mid i=\right.$ $1,2 ; 0 \leq j \leq n]$. Then we introduce so called generic linear forms $\ell_{o}, \ldots, \ell_{n}:$

$$
\ell_{k}:=\sum_{j=0}^{n} U_{k j}\left(X_{1 j}-X_{2 j}\right), \text { for } 0 \leq k \leq n \text { in } \bar{R}
$$

Note that since $\tau \bar{R}$ is generated by $(n+1)$ - elements and $\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{n} \in$ $\bar{R}$, it is clear that $\tau \bar{R}=\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{n}\right) \bar{R}$.

Let $J\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)$ be the join-variety defined by $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}$ in $\mathbb{P}_{\bar{K}}^{N}$.
62 (2.3) Lemma. 1. The ideal $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}$ is unmixed and hence $U\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+\right.\right.$ $\left.I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}=\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}$.
2. $\quad K-\operatorname{dim}\left(J\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)\right)=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}$

$$
=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(I_{1}\right)+K-\operatorname{dim}\left(I_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)+2 .
$$

$$
K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right)=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim} V_{1} \cap V_{2}+1
$$

3. There is a one-one correspondence between the isolated prime ideals of $\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right)$ in $R_{0}$ and the isolated prime ideals of $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}$ in $\bar{R}$ and that this correspondence preserves dimensions and degrees.
4. For every irreducible component $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$

$$
\operatorname{dim} C \geq \operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n
$$

5. $\quad \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=h_{0}\left(I_{1}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(I_{2}\right)=h_{0}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)$

$$
=h_{0}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R} \cdot h_{0}(\tau R) .\right.
$$

Proof.

1. Follows from (1.47).
2. Follows from (1.47).
3. We have a ring homomorphism

$$
\varphi: \bar{R} \rightarrow \bar{R}_{0}: \bar{K}\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]
$$

given by $X_{i j} \rightarrow X_{j}$ for $i=1,2$ and every $0 \leq j \leq n$. It is easy to see that $\operatorname{Ker} \varphi=\tau \bar{R}, \varphi^{-1}(\mathscr{Y})=\left(\mathscr{Y}^{\prime}+\tau\right) \bar{R}$. where $\mathscr{Y}^{\prime}$ is the prime ideal in $\bar{R}_{1}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}$ of $\bar{R}_{\circ}$ and $\varphi^{-1}\left(\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right) \bar{R}_{\circ}\right)=\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}$. Therefore $\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+\right.$ $\left.I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R} \xrightarrow{\sim}=\bar{R}_{0} /\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right) \bar{R}_{0}$ and $\mathscr{Y} \leftrightarrow \mathscr{Y}^{\prime}+\tau \bar{R}$ gives $1-1$ correspondence between the isolated prime ideals of $\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right) \bar{R}_{0}$ and the isolated prime ideals of $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}$ in $\bar{R}$. It is clear that this correspondence preserves the dimension and degree. Now (iii) follows from (1.47).
4. This follows from (iii) and the fact that, every isolated prime ideal of $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}$ has Krull dimension $K-\operatorname{dim}\left(I_{1}^{\prime}\right)+K-\operatorname{dim}\left(I_{2}^{\prime}\right)=$ $\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}+2$ (see (i) and (ii)).

Therefore it follows that every isolated prime ideals of $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+$ $\tau \bar{R}$ has Krull dimension $\geq \operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)+2-(n+1)=$ $\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n+1$.
5. We have $h_{0}(\tau \bar{R})=1$ by (1.34). Therefore we only have to prove $h_{0}\left(I_{1}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(I_{2}\right)=h_{0}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)$. We have $\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R} \xrightarrow{\sim} \bar{R}_{1} / I_{1}^{\prime} \underset{K}{\otimes}$ $\bar{R}_{2} / I_{2}^{\prime} \simeq \bar{R}_{0} / I_{1} \otimes \bar{R}_{K} / I_{2}$. Therefore $H\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}, t\right)=\sum_{i+j=t} H\left(I_{1} \bar{R}_{0}, i\right)$. $H\left(I_{2} \bar{R}_{0}, j\right)$ for all $t \geq 0$. Choose an integer $r$ such that the Hilbert functions $H\left(I_{1} \bar{R}_{0}, i\right)=$ : $H_{i}$ and $H\left(I_{2} \bar{R}_{0}, i\right)=$ : $H_{i}^{\prime}$ are given by polynomials $h_{i}$ and $h_{1}^{\prime}$, respectively for $i>r$. Then
$\sum_{t}^{i=0} H_{i} \cdot H_{t-i}^{\prime}=\sum_{i=0}^{t} h_{i} \cdot h_{t-i}^{\prime}+\sum_{i=0}^{r}\left(H_{i}-h_{i}\right) \cdot h_{t-i}^{\prime}+\sum_{i=t-r}^{t} h_{i}\left(H_{t-i}^{\prime}-h_{t-i}^{\prime}\right)$
for $n \gg 0(n>2 r)$.

Therefore it follows from (1.32) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{i=0}^{t} H_{i} \cdot H_{t-i}^{\prime} & =h_{0}\left(I_{1} \bar{R}_{0}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(I_{2} \bar{R}_{0}\right) \cdot\left[\sum_{i=0}^{t}\binom{i}{d_{1}}\binom{t-i}{d_{2}}\right]+(\text { other terms }) \\
= & h_{0}\left(I_{1} \bar{R}_{0}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(I_{2} \bar{R}_{0}\right)\binom{t}{d_{1}+d_{2}+1} \\
& + \text { terms with degree (in t) } \leq d_{1}+d_{2}
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_{0}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) R\right) & =h_{0}\left(I_{1} \bar{R}_{0}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(I_{2} \bar{R}_{0}\right) \\
& =h_{0}\left(I_{1}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(I_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

by 1.46
It is clear that Lemma (2.3), the Join-Procedure in $\mathbb{P}_{\bar{K}}^{N}$, reduces our considerations to the case that one variety is a complete intersection of degree 1 .

To calculate $h_{0}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)$, we will study the sum ideal $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}$ and the radical (denoted by $\operatorname{Rad}(\cdots))$ of this ideal.
(2.4) Notation. The following notation will be used in the sequel:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta:=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right) & =\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}+2 \\
d:=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right. & =K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right) R_{0}\right) \\
& =\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)+1 .
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ be the minimal prime ideals of $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}$ of Krull dimension $j, 0 \leq t \leq j \leq d \leq \delta$. We thus put:
(*) $\operatorname{Rad}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right)=\mathscr{Y}_{1, d} \cap \ldots \cap \mathscr{Y}_{m_{d}, d} \cap \ldots \cap \mathscr{Y}_{1, t} \cap \ldots \cap \mathscr{Y}_{m_{t}, t}$,
where $m_{d} \geq 1, m_{d-1}, \ldots, m_{t} \geq 0$ are integers, and where we set $m_{j}=0$ for an integer $t \leq j \leq d-1$ if $(*)$ has no prime ideal of Krull dimension $j$.
(2.5) Remark. From 2.3 (iii) it follows that the prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in (*) of 2.4 are in $1-1$ correspondence with the irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ and that this correspondence preserves the dimension and the degree.
(2.6) Lemma. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ and $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ be the prime ideal corresponding to $C$ in $(*)$ of $\left[2.4\right.$ Put $\bar{A}=\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+\right.\right.$ $\left.\left.I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)_{\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}}$, the local ring of the join-variety $J\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)$ at $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$. Then
(i) $K-\operatorname{dim}(\bar{A})=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)-K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}\right)=\delta-j$.
(ii) Let $\mathscr{Y} \subset \bar{R}$ be a prime ideal. Then
$\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{k}\right) \bar{R}\right)$ with $\mathscr{Y} \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i j}$ and $K-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y})$
$=\ell$ if and only if $\mathscr{Y} \bar{A} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{A} /\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{k}\right) \bar{A}\right)$ and $K-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y} \bar{A})=\ell-j$.
Proof. Follows from 2.3 (i) and 1.45
(2.7) Proposition. (i) For any $\delta-d$ generic linear forms, say $\ell_{0}, \ldots$, $\ell_{\delta-d-1}$ we have

$$
K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-d-1}\right) \bar{R}=d\right.
$$

(if $\delta=d$ then we $\left.\operatorname{set}\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-d-1}\right) \bar{R}=(0)\right)$.
(ii) $\delta-t-1 \leq n$ and equality holds if and only if $t=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+$ $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n+1$.
Proof. (i) Assume that there exists $k$ such that $0 \leq k \leq \delta-d-1$ and $\ell_{k} \in \mathscr{Y}$ for some $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\right.\right.$ ell $\left.\left._{0}, \ldots, \ell_{k-1}\right) \bar{R}\right)$ with $K-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y}=\delta-K)$. Let $k+1 \leq m \leq n$. Let $\varphi_{m}$ be te automorphism of $\bar{K}$ over $K$ given by $\varphi_{m}\left(U_{k \ell}\right)=U_{m \ell}, \varphi_{m}\left(U_{m \ell}\right)=U_{k \ell}$ and $\varphi_{m}\left(U_{p \ell}\right)=U_{p \ell}$ for all $0 \leq p(\neq k, m) \leq n$ and $0 \leq \ell \leq n$. Now, since $\mathscr{Y}$ is defined over $K_{1}=\overline{K\left(U_{p j} \mid 0 \leq p \leq k-1, o \leq j \leq n\right)}$ and $\varphi_{m}\left(K_{1}\right) \subset K_{1}$, we get $\varphi_{m}\left(\ell_{k}\right)=\ell_{m} \in \mathscr{Y}$ and therefore $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+$ $\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{n}\right) \bar{R} \subset \mathscr{Y}$. Therefore we get $d=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right) \geq$ $K-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y})=\delta-k$, that is, $\delta-d-1 \geq k \geq \delta-d$ which is absurd. This proves (i).
(ii) From 2.3 (i) and 2.5we get $t \geq \operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n+1 \geq \delta-n-1$.

Therefore $\delta-t-1 \leq n$ and equality holds if and only if

$$
t=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n+1
$$

(2.8) Proposition. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ and $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ be the prime ideal corresponding to $C$ in $(*)$ of 2.4 Let $\bar{A}=\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+\right.\right.$ $\left.\left.I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)_{\mathscr{H}_{i, j}}$ be the local ring of the join-variety $J\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)$ at $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$. Then $\left\{\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right\}$ is a reducing system of parameters for $\bar{A}$.
Proof. In view of 2.6 (ii) it is enough to prove:
(i) For every $1 \leq k \leq \delta-j-1$,
$\ell_{k-1} \neq \mathscr{Y}$ for all $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{k-2}\right) \bar{R}\right)$ with $\mathscr{Y} \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ and $k-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y}) \geq \delta-k$.
(ii) $\ell_{\delta-j-1} \notin \mathscr{Y}$ for all $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right) \bar{R}\right)$ with $\mathscr{Y} \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ and $k-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y})=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right) \bar{R}\right)$
Proof of (i) : Suppose for some $1 \leq k \leq \delta-j-1, \ell_{k-1} \in \mathscr{Y}$ for some $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)$ with $\mathscr{Y} \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ and $K-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y}) \geq \delta-k$. Then from the proof of 2.7 i) we get

$$
\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \subset \bar{R} \subset \mathscr{Y} \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}
$$

Therefore $\mathscr{Y}=\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ and $K-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y})=j \geq \delta-k$. This shows that $j \geq \delta-k \geq \delta-\delta+j+1=j+1$ which is absurd.
Proof of (ii) : From (i) we get
$K-\operatorname{dim}\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2} \bar{R}\right)=\delta-(\delta-j-1)=j+1$. If $l_{\delta-j-1} \in \mathscr{Y}$ for same $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{o}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right) \bar{R}\right)$ with $\mathscr{Y} \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$. Then by the same argument in (i) above we get $\mathscr{Y}=\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$. Therefore $K-\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y})=j$. This proves (ii).

## C. Step I of the Proof

Step I. In this step, we define the intersection numbers $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$, where $C$ is an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $\operatorname{dim}(C)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)$.

The following notation will be used in the sequel.

$$
\begin{aligned}
{\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{-1} } & :=\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R} \\
{\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{k} } & :=\cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{k-1}\right)+\ell_{k} \bar{R}
\end{aligned}
$$

for any $0 \leq k \leq \delta-d-1$.
(2.9) Remarks. (i) $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R} \subset\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{k}\right) \bar{R} \subset\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{k}$ for every $0 \leq k \leq \delta-d-1$.
(ii) It follows from the lemma 2.7 (i) and the repeated application of 1.46(ii) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Rad}\left(\cup \left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right)_{k-1}\right)\right.\right. & =\operatorname{Rad}\left(\cup\left(\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right]\right)+l_{k-2} \bar{R}\right)\right. \\
& =\operatorname{Rad}\left(\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right]_{k-2}\right)+l_{k-1} \bar{R}\right) \\
& =\ldots \\
& =\operatorname{Rad}\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{k-1}\right) \bar{R}
\end{aligned}
$$

for every $0 \leq k \leq \delta-d$.
(iii) From (ii), we get

$$
\left(\cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{k-l}\right): \ell_{k}\right)=\cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{k-l}\right)
$$

for every $0 \leq k \leq \delta-d-1$.

Now we study the primary decomposition of $\cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-l}\right)$ in the following lemma.
(2.10) Lemma. (i) The primary decomposition of

$$
U \cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-1}\right)
$$

is given by

$$
\cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-l}\right)=q_{l, d} \bigcap \ldots q_{m_{d}}, d \bigcap \mathscr{O}_{1}
$$

where $q_{i, d}$ are primary ideals belonging to the prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d}$ in $(*)$ of $(2.4) 1 \leq i \leq m_{d}$ and $\mathscr{O}$ is the intersection of all other primary component of $\left.\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-1}\right)$.
(ii) $\left.\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=h_{o}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)=h_{o}\left(\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-1}\right)\right)$

$$
=\sum_{i=1}^{m_{d}}\left(\text { length }^{\text {of }} q_{i, d}\right) \cdot h_{o}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{i, d}\right)+h_{o}(\mathscr{O})
$$

(iii) Every prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in (*) of (2.4) with $t \leq j \leq d-1$ contains $\mathscr{O}_{1}$. In particular, if $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has an irreducible component of Krull dimension $\leq d-1$ then $\mathscr{O}_{1} \neq \bar{R}$.
(iv) Every associated prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}$ of $\mathscr{O}_{1}$ has Krull dimension d.
(v) The diagonal ideal $\tau \bar{R}$ is not contained in any associated prime of $\mathscr{O}_{1}$.

Proof. (i) From 2.7)(i) and (2.9)(ii), we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left.K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-1}\right)\right)= \\
& \left.\quad K-\operatorname{dim}\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(l_{0}, \cdots, l_{\delta-d-1}\right) \bar{R}\right)=d
\end{aligned}
$$

and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left.\operatorname{Rad}\left(\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-1}\right)\right)= \\
& \quad \operatorname{Rad}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-d-1}\right) \bar{R}\right) \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, d}
\end{aligned}
$$

for every $1 \leq i \leq m_{d}$. Therefore $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d}$ is associated to $\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+\right.\right.$ $\left.\left.I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-1}$ ) for every $1 \leq i \leq m_{d}$.
(ii) From (1.40) and (2.9)(iii), (1.36) iii), we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left.h_{o}\left(\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-1}\right)\right) & \left.\left.\left.=h_{o}\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-2}\right)+\ell_{\delta-d-1} \bar{R}\right)\right) \\
& \left.=h_{0}\left(U\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-2}\right)\right) \\
& \left.=\ldots=h_{0}\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(iii) We have from the proof of (i) that

$$
\left.\operatorname{Rad}\left(\cup\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-1}\right)\right)=\mathscr{Y}_{1, d} \cap \cdots \cap \mathscr{Y}_{m_{d}, d} \cap \operatorname{Rad}(\mathscr{O}) \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}
$$

for every $t \leq j \leq d-1$ and for all $i$. Therefore we get $\mathscr{O}_{1} \subset$ $\operatorname{Rad}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right) \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ for every $t \leq j \leq d-1$ and for all $i$.
(iv) Clear.
(v) If $\tau \bar{R} \subset \mathscr{Y}$ for some $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} / \mathscr{O}_{1}\right)$ then $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R} \subset$ $\left.\operatorname{Rad}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right) \subset \mathscr{Y}$. Therefore $\mathscr{Y}=\mathscr{Y}_{i, d}^{\prime}$ because $K-$ $\operatorname{dim}(\mathscr{Y})=d$ (from (iv)). This is contradiction!
(2.11) Definition. Let $C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ be an irreducible component with $\operatorname{dim} C=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=d-1$. Let $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d}$ be the prime ideal in $(*)$ of (2.4) corresponding $C$ (see (2.5). We define the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ to be the length of the corresponding $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d}$-primary component $q_{i, d-1}$ of $\cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{\delta-d-l}\right)$.

From (2.10)(i) it is clear that, for every irreducible component $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $\operatorname{dim}(C)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)$ the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ is defined and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq l$.
(2.12) Remarks. (i) It follows (2.10)(ii) and the definition (2.11) that 71

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{C} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}(C)+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right)
$$

where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $\operatorname{dim}(C)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)$.
(ii) If $t=d$, then our algorithm stops.

Assume that $t<d$, that is, $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has irreducible components of Krull dimension $\leq d-1$. Therefore by 2.10 (iii) $\mathscr{O} \neq \bar{R}$. In the next step we apply modified procedure to study $h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right)$.

## D. Step II of the Proof

Step II. In the step, we define the intersection numbers $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ in the following two cases:
(i) If $C$ is an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ of Krull dimension $\leq d-1$.
(ii) Certain imbedded irreducible subvarieties $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $t \leq$ $K-\operatorname{dim}(C) \leq d-1$.

## (2.13)

From (2.10)(ii) we have $\left(l_{\delta-d}, \ldots, l_{n}\right) \bar{R} \not \subset \mathscr{Y}$ for every prime ideal $\mathscr{Y} \in$ $\operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} / \mathscr{O}_{1}\right)$. It follows from the proof of the proposition (2.7)(i) that $\ell_{r} \notin \mathscr{Y}$ for every $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} / \mathscr{O}_{1}\right)$ with $n \geq r \geq \delta-d$. Consider $l_{\delta-d}$, we have

Therefore $K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right)=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right)-1=d-1$ and $\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}: l_{\delta-d^{\prime}}\right)=\mathscr{O}_{1}$

Now we study the primary decomposition of the ideal $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d^{\prime}} \bar{R}\right)$. Every primary component $q$ of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{\ell}+\ell_{\delta-d^{\prime}} \bar{R}\right)$ belongs to one of the following three cases:

Case (1). $q$ is $\mathscr{Y}$ - primary such that there is a prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in $(*)$ of (2.4), $t \leq j \leq d-1$ with $\mathscr{Y}=\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$.

Case (2).$q$ is $\mathscr{Y}$-primary such that there is a prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{i j}$ in $(*)$ of (2.4) with $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j} \subset \mathscr{Y}$.

Case (3). $q$ is $\mathscr{Y}$-primary such that $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j} \not \subset \mathscr{Y}$ for all prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in (*) of (2.4)

Let $\cup\left(\mathscr{O}_{\ell}+l_{\delta-d^{\prime}} \bar{R}\right)=\bigcap q_{1} \cap \bigcap q_{2} \cap \bigcap q_{3}$ be the primary decomposition of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+\ell_{\delta-d^{\prime}} \bar{R}\right)$, where $q_{1}, q_{2}$ and $q_{3}$ run through the primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+\ell_{\delta-d^{\prime}} \bar{R}\right)$ which appear in case (1), case (2) and case (3), respectively. If there is no primary component in case (1), case (2) or case (3) then we set $\bigcap q_{i}=\bar{R}$ for $i=1,2$ or 3 . We put $\mathscr{O}_{2}:=\bigcap q_{3}$. We then have
(2.14) Lemma. (i) If $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has irreducible components of Krull dimension $d-1$, then $\mathscr{Y}_{1}$ runs through prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d-1} 1 \leq i \leq$ $m_{d-1}$ in (*) of (2.4).
(ii) $h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right)=\sum_{q_{1}}\left(\right.$ length of $\left.q_{1}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}\right)+\sum_{q_{2}}\left(\right.$ length of $\left.q_{2}\right) h_{0}\left(\mathscr{V}_{2}\right)+h_{o}\left(\mathscr{O}_{2}\right)$.
(iii) Every prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in $(*)$ of (2.4) with $t \leq j \leq d-2$ contains 73 $\mathscr{O}_{2}$. In particular, if $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has an irreducible component of Krull dimension $\leq d-2$ then $\mathscr{O}_{2} \neq \bar{R}$.
(iv) Every associated prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}$ of $\mathscr{O}_{2}$ has Krull dimension $d-1$.
(v) The diagonal ideal $\tau \bar{R}$ is not contained in any associated prime ideal of $\mathscr{O}_{2}$.

Proof. (i) From (2.10)(iv) and (2.10)(iii), we have $\mathscr{O}_{1} \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, d-1}$ for every $1 \leq i \leq m_{d-1}$. Therefore $\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+\ell_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right) \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, d-1}$ for every $1 \leq i \leq m_{d-1}$. Since $K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right)=d-1=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{i, d-1}\right)$ it follows that $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d-1}$ is associated to $\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right)$ for every $1 \leq i \leq$ $m_{d-1}$.
(ii) From (1.36) (iii) and (1.40) we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
& h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right)=h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right)=h_{0}\left(U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right)\right) \\
= & \sum_{q_{1}}\left(\text { length of } q_{1}\right) h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}\right)+\sum_{q_{2}}\left(\text { length of } q_{2}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}\right)+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{2}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

(iii) From (2.10) (iii), we have $\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right) \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ for every $t \leq j \leq d-2$. Therefore $\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+\ell_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right) \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ for every $t \leq j \leq d-2$. Now it follows from (1.45) (ii) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{Rad}\left(\cup\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right)\right) \\
& =\mathscr{Y}_{i, d-1} \bigcap \cdots \mathscr{Y}_{m_{d-l}, d-l} \bigcap \cap \mathscr{Y}_{2} \bigcap \operatorname{Rad}\left(\mathscr{O}_{2}\right) \\
& \quad=\operatorname{Rad}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right) \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j} \text { for every } t \leq j \leq d-2
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $\mathscr{O}_{2} \subset \operatorname{Rad}\left(\mathscr{O}_{2}\right) \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ for every $t \leq j \leq d-2$.
(iv) Clear.
(v) If $\tau \bar{R} \subset \mathscr{Y}$ for some $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\bar{R} / \mathscr{O}_{2}\right)$ then $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right)+\tau \subset \mathscr{Y}$. Therefore $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j} \subset \mathscr{Y}$ for some $t \leq j \leq d$ and some $i$. This is a contradiction (see (i)).
(2.15) Definition. (a) Let $C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ be an irreducible component with $K-\operatorname{dim}(C)=d-1$. Let $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d-1}$ be the prime ideal in (*) of (2.4) corresponding to $C$ (see (2.5)). We define the intersection number $J\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ to be the length of the corresponding $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d-1}$-primary component $q_{i, d-1}$ of $\cup\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\lambda-d} \bar{R}\right)$ (see (2.14)(i)).
From (2.14)(i), it is clear that, for every irreducible component $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $K-\operatorname{dim}(C)=d-1$ the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ is defined and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq 1$.
From 2.3)(iii), it follows that the prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{2}$ which appear in case (2) of (2.13) corresponds to certain imbedded irreducible subvariety of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$.
(b) Let $C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ be an irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{2}$ which appear in case (2) of (2.13) We define the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ to be the length of the corresponding $\mathscr{Q}_{2}$-primary component $q_{2}$ of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right)\left(\right.$ see (2.13). It is clear that $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq 1$.
(2.16) Remarks. (i) Put $c_{1}:=\sum_{q_{2}}$ (length of $\left.q_{2}\right) h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}\right)$, where $q_{2}$ runs through all primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}+l_{\delta-d} \bar{R}\right)$ which appears in case (2) of (2.13) Then it follows from (2.12)(i) and (2.14)(ii) that
$\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{C} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}(C)+c_{1}+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{2}\right)$.
where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $d-1 \leq K-\operatorname{dim}(C) \leq d$.
(ii) If $t=d-1$, then our algorithm of step $\square$ stops.

## (2.17)

Assume that $t<d-1$, that is $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has irreducible component of Krull dimension $\leq d-2$. Therefore by (2.14)(iii), $\mathscr{O}_{2} \neq \bar{R}$. Then we again apply the above procedure to the ideal $\mathscr{O}$. In general, the application of our algorithm to the ideal $\mathscr{O}_{s} \leq s \leq d-t$ is given by the following considerations.

Suppose the ideals $\mathscr{O}_{2}, \cdots, \mathscr{O}_{s}, 2 \leq s \leq d-t$ are already defined. Consider the ideal $\left(\mathscr{O}_{s} l_{\delta-d+s-1} \bar{R}\right)$. Then we have
(i) $K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}+\ell_{\delta-d+s-1} \bar{R}\right)=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}+l_{\delta-d+s-1} \bar{R}\right)=d-s$ and $\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}: \ell_{\delta-d+s-1}\right)=\mathscr{O}_{s}$
Let $\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}+\ell_{\delta-d+s-1} \bar{R}\right)=\bigcap q_{1} \cap \bigcap q_{2} \cap \bigcap q_{3}$ be the primary decomposition of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}+\ell_{\delta-d+s-1} \bar{R}\right)$, which appear in case (11), case (2) 76 and case (3) of (2.13) respectively. We put $\mathscr{O}_{s+1}:=\bigcap q_{3}$. Then we have
(ii) If $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has irreducible components of $K$-dimension $d-s$ then $\mathscr{Y}_{1}$ runs through the prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{i, d-s}$ in $(*)$ of (2.4).
(iii)

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}\right) & =h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}+l_{\delta-d+s-1} \bar{R}\right)=h_{0}\left(U\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}+l_{\delta-d+s-1} \bar{R}\right)\right) \\
& =\sum_{q_{1}}\left(\text { length of }\left(q_{1}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}\right)\right. \\
& +\sum_{q_{2}}\left(\text { length of }\left(q_{2}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}\right)+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{s+1}\right) .\right.
\end{aligned}
$$

We put $c_{s}=\sum_{q_{2}}$ ( length of $\left(q_{2}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}\right)$, where $q_{2}$ runs through all primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{s}+\ell_{\delta-d+s-1} \bar{R}\right)$ which appear in case (2) of (2.13)
(iv) Every prime ideal ${ }_{i, j}$ in ( $*$ ) of (2.4) with $t \leq j \leq d-s-1$ contains $\mathscr{O}_{s+1}$. In particular, if $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has an irreducible of Krull dimension $\leq d-s-1$ then $\mathscr{O}_{s+1} \neq \bar{R}$.
(v) Every associated prime $\mathscr{Y}$ of $\mathscr{O}_{s+1}$ has Krull dimension $d-s$.
(vi) The diagonal ideal $\tau \bar{R}$ is not contained in any associated prime ideal of $\mathscr{O}_{s+1}$

In any case, our algorithm of Step $\Pi$ stops if we have constructed the ideal $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}$. We obtain this ideal by studying the primary decomposition of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}+\ell_{\delta-t-1} \bar{R}\right)$. Therefore the last step yields the following result:

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}\right) & =h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}+\ell_{\delta-t-1} \bar{R}\right)=h_{0}\left(\cup\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}+\ell_{\delta-t-1} \bar{R}\right)\right) \\
& =\sum_{i=0}^{m_{t}}\left(\text { length of } q_{i, t}\right) h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{i, t}\right)+c_{d-t}+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $q_{i, t}$ is the $\mathscr{Y}_{i, t}$-primary component of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}+\ell_{\delta-t-1} \bar{R}\right)$ for all $1 \leq i \leq m_{t}$ and $c_{d-t}=\sum_{q_{2}}$ (length of $\left.q_{2}\right) h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2}\right)$, where $q_{2}$ runs through all primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}+\ell_{\delta-t-1} \bar{R}\right)$ which appear in case (2) of (2.13)

Summarizing all these we have:
(2.18)
(i) For every irreducible component $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ we have defined the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$. Moreover, $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq 1$ and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ is the length of the corresponding $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$-primary component $q_{i, j}$ of $\cup\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}+\ell_{\delta-t-1} \bar{R}\right), t \leq j \leq d$ (see (2.17)(ii)).
(ii) We have collected certain imbedded irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the primary components of $\cup\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}+\right.$ $\left.\ell_{\delta-t-1} \bar{R}\right), 1 \leq s \leq d-t$ which appear in case (2) of (2.13) For
every imbedded irreducible subvariety $C$ of $V_{1} \bigcap V_{2}$ in this collection we have defined the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$. Moreover, $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq 1$ and $j\left(V_{2}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ is the length of the corresponding $\mathscr{V}_{2}$-primary component $q_{2}$ of $\mathbf{7 8}$ $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t}+l_{\delta-t-1} \bar{R}\right), 1 \leq s \leq d-t$ which appear in case (2) of (2.13)
(iii) It follows from (2.16)(i) and (2.17)(iii),(vii) that

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \\
& \quad=\sum_{C} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C)+c_{1}+c_{2}+\cdots c_{d-t}+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. We put $c\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right):=c_{1}+c_{2}+\cdots c_{d-t}+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}\right)$. This $c\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)$ is called the correction term.
(iv) If $\delta-t-1=n$ then $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}=\bar{R}$.

Proof. If $\delta-t-1=n$ then $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R} \subset \mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}$. Therefore, if $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1} \neq \bar{R}$ then for every associated some prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}$ of $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+l}$ contains some prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in $(*)$ of (2.4). This is a contradiction (see (2.17).

We note the following important observation from Step $I$
(2.19) Lemma. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. Let $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ be the prime ideal corresponding to $C$ in (*) of (2.4). Let $\bar{A}=$ $\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}, I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)_{\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}}$ be the local ring of the join-variety $J\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)$ at $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$. Then we have
(i) $\mathscr{O}_{k+1} \bar{A}=U\left(\mathscr{O}_{k}+\ell_{\delta-d+k-1} \bar{A}\right)$ for every $0 \leq k \leq d-j-1$, where $\mathscr{O}:=U\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}, I_{2}^{\prime}\right)\right]_{\delta-d-1}\right)$.
(ii) $\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+l_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}=U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+l_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}=q_{i, j} \bar{A}$ where $q_{i, j}$ is the $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$-primary component of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+l_{\delta-j-1} \bar{R}\right)$
(iii) $\mathscr{U}_{d-j+1} \bar{A}=\bar{A}$.

Proof. (i) From (2.17) i), we have

$$
\begin{gathered}
K-\operatorname{dim} U\left(\mathscr{O}_{k}+\ell_{\delta-d+k-1} \bar{R}\right)=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{k+1}\right)=d-k \text { and } \\
\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\mathscr{O}_{k+1} \Longleftrightarrow \mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(U\left(\mathscr{O}_{k}+\ell_{\delta-d+k-1} \bar{R}\right)\right) \text { and } \mathscr{Y}_{p, \ell} \nsubseteq \mathscr{Y}\right.
\end{gathered}
$$

for all $p$ and $t \leq \ell \leq d$.
Therefore, $\mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(\mathscr{O}_{k+1}\right)$ and $\mathscr{Y} \subset \mathscr{Y}_{i, j} \Longleftrightarrow \mathscr{Y} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(U\left(\mathscr{O}_{k}+\right.\right.$ $\left.\ell_{\delta-d+k-1} \bar{R}\right)$ ) and $\mathscr{Y} \underset{+}{\subset} \mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$. This shows that $\mathscr{O}_{k+1} \bar{A}=U\left(\mathscr{O}_{k}+\right.$ $\left.\ell_{\delta-d+k-1}\right) \bar{A}$ for every $0 \leq k \leq d-j-1$.
(ii) It follows from (2.17)(i) and (2.17) ii) that $K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+\right.$ $\left.\left.\ell_{\delta-j-1} \bar{R}\right)\right)=j$ and $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j} \in \operatorname{Ass}\left(U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+\ell_{\delta-j-1} \bar{R}\right)\right) \subset \operatorname{Ass}\left(d_{-j}+\right.$ $\ell_{\delta-j-1} \bar{R}$. Therefore $\left.\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+\ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}=U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+\ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}=q_{i, j} \bar{A}$, where $q_{i, j}$ is the $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$-primary component of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+\ell_{\delta-j-1} \bar{R}\right)$.
(iii) Since $K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j+1}\right)=j=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}\right)$, it follows from the proof of (i) that $\operatorname{Ass}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j+1} \bar{A}=\phi\right.$. Therefore $\mathscr{O}_{d-j+1} \bar{A}=\bar{A}$.

## (2.20) Corollary.

$$
e_{0}\left(\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A} ; \bar{A}=\ell\left(\bar{A} /\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-j}+\ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}\right)=j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)\right.
$$

Proof. This follows from (2.9), 2.19(i) and (ii), (1.25) and (2.18) i).

## E. Step III of the Proof

Step III. In this step we collect certain imbedded irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $t-s \leq K-\operatorname{dim}(C)<t$, where $s=n-\delta+t+1 \geq 0$ (see (2.7)(ii)).

## (2.21)

From (2.7)(ii), we have $\delta-t-1 \leq n$. If $\delta-t-1=n$ then $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}=\bar{R}$ (see (2.18) iv)) and our algorithm stops.

Assume that $\delta-t-1<n$ and $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1} \neq \bar{R}$. Put $\delta-t-1+s=n$ for some $s>0$. To calculate $h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}\right)$, we study the primary decomposition of the ideal $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}+\ell_{\delta-t} \bar{R}\right)$. Every primary component $q$ of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}+\right.$ $\ell_{\delta-t} \bar{R}$ belongs to one of the following two cases:

Case (1). $q$ is $\mathscr{Y}$-primary such that there is a prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in $(*)$ of (2.4) such that $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j} \subset \mathscr{+}$.

Case (2). $q$ is $\mathscr{Y}$-primary such that the $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j} \not \subset \mathscr{Y}$ for all prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in (*) of (2.4).

Let $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}+\ell_{\delta-t} \bar{R}\right)=\cap q_{1} \cap \cap q_{2}$ be the primary decomposition of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}+\ell_{\delta-t} \bar{R}\right)$, where $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ run through the primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}+\ell_{\delta-t} \bar{R}\right.$ which appear in case (1) and case (2), respectively. We put $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+2}:=\cap q_{2}$. Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}\right) & =h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}+\ell_{\delta-t} \bar{R}\right) \\
& =\sum_{q_{1}}\left(\text { length of } q_{1}\right) h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}\right)+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

where $q_{1}$ runs through the primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}+\ell_{\delta-t} \bar{R}\right)$ which appear in case (11).

From (2.3)(iii), it follows that the prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{1}$ which appear in $\mathbf{8 1}$ case (2) corresponds to certain imbedded irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap$ $V_{2}$.
(2.22) Definition. Let $C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ be an irreducible subvariety of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{1}$ which appear in case (1) of (2.21). We define the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ to be the length of the corresponding $\mathscr{Y}_{1}$-primary component $q_{1}$ of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}+\ell_{\delta-t} \bar{R}\right)$ (see (2.21). It is clear that $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq 1$. Assume $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+2}=\bar{R}$; then our algorithm of step $I I$ stops.

## (2.23)

If $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+2} \neq \bar{R}$, then we repeat the above procedure to the ideal $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+2}$ by using $\ell_{\delta-t+1}$.

In general, the application of our algorithm to the ideal $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}, 1 \leq$ $k \leq s=n-\delta+t+1$ is given by the following considerations:

Suppose the ideals $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+2}, \ldots, \mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}$ are already defined for $2 \leq$ $k \leq s$. Then consider the ideal $\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right)$. Then we have

$$
K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right)=K-\operatorname{dim} U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1}\right)=t-k
$$

and $\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}: \ell_{\delta-t+k-1}\right)=\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}$.
Let $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right)=\cap q_{1} \cap \cap q_{2}$ be the primary decomposition of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right)$, where $q_{1}$ and $q_{2}$ are the primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right)$ which appear in case (1) and case (2) of (2.21) , respectively. We put $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k+1}=\cap q_{2}$. Then we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}\right. & =h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right)=h_{0}\left(U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right)\right) \\
& \left.=\sum_{q_{1}} \text { length of } q_{1}\right) h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}\right)+h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k+1}\right) \text { for } 2 \leq k \leq s
\end{aligned}
$$

In any case, our algorithm stops if we have used all generic linear forms $\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{n}$. Therefore $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+s+1}=\bar{R}$, where $s=n-\delta+t+1$. Therefore the last step yields:

$$
\begin{aligned}
h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+s}\right) & =h_{0}\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+s}+\ell_{n} \bar{R}=h_{0}\left(U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+s}+\ell_{n} \bar{R}\right)\right)\right. \\
& =\sum_{q_{1}}\left(\text { length of } q_{1}\right) \cdot h_{0}\left(\mathscr{Y}_{1}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

where $q_{1}$ runs through all $\mathscr{Y}_{1}$-primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+s}+\ell_{n} \bar{R}\right.$ (Note that all primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+s}+\ell_{n} \bar{R}\right)$ appear in case (1) of (2.21).
(2.24) Remark. Note that $K-\operatorname{dim} \mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}=t-k$ for every $1 \leq k \leq s$. Therefore, in this step, we have collected certain imbedded irreducible subvarieties $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right), 1 \leq k \leq s$, which appear in case (1) of (2.21) . For every imbedded irreducible subvariety $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ in this collection, we have defined the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$. Moreover, $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq 1, j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ is the length of the corresponding $\mathscr{Y}_{1}$-primary component $q_{1}$ of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{d-t+k}+\ell_{\delta-t+k-1} \bar{R}\right)$, $1 \leq k \leq s=n-\delta+t-1$ which appear in case (1) of (2.21)

## Proof of the Main Theorem(2.1).

(i) Let $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ be the collection of irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ consisting of irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ which are collected in (2.18) i), (2.18) (ii) and (2.23) Then the intersection numbers $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \geq 1$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C_{i}$ are defined and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right)$ are the lengths of certain well-defined primary ideals. It follows from (2.18) (iii) and (2.23) that

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{C_{i}} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)
$$

(ii) It is clear from (2.18)(i) that every irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap$ $V_{2}$ belongs to our collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$.
(iii) Let $C_{i} \in\left\{C_{i}\right\}$. Then it follows (2.18) (ii) and (2.23) that

$$
K-\operatorname{dim}\left(C_{i}\right) \geq t-s=t-(n-\delta+t+1)=\delta-n-1
$$

that is,
$\operatorname{dim}\left(C_{i}\right) \geq \operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n$.

This completes the proof of the main theorem (2.1)
We have the following generalization of the main theorem (2.1)

## (2.25) The General Main Theorem

Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right), \ldots, V_{r}=V\left(I_{r}\right), r \geq 2$ be pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}, \ldots, I_{r} \subset K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. There exists a collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap \cdots \cap V_{r}$ (one of which may be $\phi$ ) such that
(i) For every $C_{i} \in\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ there are intersection number, say $j\left(V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r}\right.$; 84 $\left.C_{i}\right) \geq 1$, of $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r}$ along $C_{i}$ given by the lengths of certain welldefined primary ideals such that

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{i}\right)=\sum_{C_{i} \in\left\{C_{i}\right\}} j\left(V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r} ; C_{i}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right),
$$

where we put deg $(\phi)=1$.
(ii) If $C \subset V_{1} \cap \cdots \cap V_{r}$ is an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap \cdots \cap V_{r}$ then $C_{i} \in\left\{C_{i}\right\}$.
(iii) For every $C_{i} \in\left\{C_{i}\right\}$,

$$
\operatorname{dim}\left(C_{i}\right) \geq \sum_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{dim}\left(V_{i}\right)-(r-1) . n .
$$

Proof. Proof of this theorem is very similar to the proof of that in case $r=2$ (see (2.1). Therefore we omit the proof. (For details, see PatilVogel [56, Main theorem (1.2)]).

## F. Consequences

In the following, we list some immediate consequences of the main theorem some of which are already known.

A typical classical result in this direction says that if $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r}, r \geq$ 2 are pure dimensional subvarieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$, and $\sum_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{dim}\left(V_{i}\right)=(r-1) . n$, and $\bigcap_{i=1}^{r} V_{i}$ is finite set of isolated points, then $\bigcap_{i=1}^{r} V_{i}$ contains atmost $\prod_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{i}\right)$ points. The following corollary (2.26) strengthens this to allow arbitrary intersections.

## (2.26) Corollary (Refined Bezout's Theorem)

Let $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r} \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}, r \geq 2$ be pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$. Let $Z_{1}, \ldots, Z_{m}$ be the irreducible components of $\bigcap_{i=1}^{r} V_{r}$. Then

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{i}\right) \geq \sum_{i=1}^{m} \operatorname{deg}\left(Z_{i}\right) \geq m .
$$

This refined Bezout's theorem was developed by W.Fulton and R.MacPherson (see [19], [18]) to give an affirmative answer the following question asked by S.Kleiman in 1979.

## (2.27) Corollary (Kleiman's Question)

Let $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r} \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}, r \geq 2$ be pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$. Then the number of irreducible components of $\bigcap_{i=1}^{r} V_{i}$ is bounded by the Bezout's number $\prod_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{i}\right)$.

The first proof is given in [17, §7.6] (see also [18]). A second proof (see [17]) was suggested by a construction of Deligne used to reduce another intersection question in projective space to an intersection with a linear factor (see also the method used in [98 Lemma on p.127] and (2.3) (v)). A new interpretation of the refined Bezout's theorem was given by R.Lazarsfeld [45].

The following Corollary (2.28) strengthens the refined Bezout's theorem (2.26)
(2.28) Corollary . Let $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r} \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}, r \geq 2$ be pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$. Then

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{i}\right) \geq \sum_{C} j\left(V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C)
$$

where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap \cdots \cap V_{r}$.
The following corollary (2.29) gives a generalization of C.G.Jacobi's observation (see the Historical Introduction, [36], [16] and [60]).
(2.29) Corollary . Let $F_{1}, \ldots, F_{n}$ be any hypersurfaces in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ of degrees $d_{1}, \ldots, d_{n}$, respectively. Assume that $\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} F_{i}$ contains a finite set of isolated points,say $P_{1}, \ldots, P_{s}$. Then we get

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{n} d_{i}-\sum_{C} \operatorname{deg}(C) \geq \prod_{i=1}^{n} d_{i}-\sum_{C} j\left(F_{1}, \ldots, F_{n} ; C\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}(C) \geq s .
$$

where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V:=\bigcap_{i=1}^{n} F_{i}$ with $\operatorname{dim}(C) \geq 1$.

## (2.30)

Analyzing these results and their proofs, one might be tempted to ask the following question:

Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$, and $I_{2} \subset K\left[X_{n}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. We consider a primary decomposition of

$$
I_{1}+I_{2}=q_{1} \cap \cdots \cap q_{m} \cap q_{m+1} \cap \cdots \cap q_{\ell}
$$

where $q_{i}$ is $\mathscr{Y}_{i}$-primary and $\mathscr{Y}_{1}, \ldots, \mathscr{Y}_{m}$ are the minimal prime ideals of $I_{1}+I_{2}$. Then

87 Question 1. If $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n$ is then $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)$. $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \geq \ell-1$ ?

Question 2. If $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)>\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n$ is then $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)$. $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \geq \ell$ ?

Question 3. If $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)>m$, is then $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \geq \ell$ ?
However, these questions have negative answers, as we will show by examples (3.14) in the next chapter.

## Chapter 3

## Examples, Applications and Problems

## A. Examples

In this section, we shall illustrate the proof of the main theorem (2.1) by describing some examples.

First, we would like to make the following definitions.

## We preserve the notation of Chapter II

(3.1) Definition. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2} \subset R_{0}:=K\left[K_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$.
(a) An irreducible subvariety $C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ is said to be an imbedded component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$, if the defining prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}(C)=\mathscr{Y}$ of $C$ is an imbedded prime ideal of $\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right)$.
(b) An irreducible subvariety $C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ is called a geometric imbedded component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$, if
(i) the defining prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}(C)=\mathscr{Y}$ of $C$ is not associated to $I_{1}+I_{2}$ and
(ii) $C$ does yield a contribution to Bezout's number $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}$ $\left(V_{2}\right)$, that is, $C$ belongs to our collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of the main theorem (2.1)
In the following examples, we use the notation of Chapter II. For simplicity, we put $X_{1 j}=X_{j}$ and $X_{2 j}=Y_{j}$ for all $0 \leq j \leq n$.

89 (3.1) Example. Let $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ be two hypersurfaces in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{2}$ defined by $F_{1}:=X_{2}^{2}\left(X_{2}-X_{0}\right)=0$ and $F_{2}:=X_{1} X_{2}=0$. Put $I_{1}=\left(F_{1}\right)$ and $I_{2}=\left(F_{2}\right)\left(\subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right]\right)$. It is easy to see that:
(i) The primary decomposition of $I_{1}+I_{2}$ is given by $I_{1}+I_{2}=\left(X_{2}\right) \cap$ $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}-X_{0}\right) \cap\left(X_{1}, X_{2}^{2}\right)$ and therefore $\operatorname{Rad}\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right)=\left(X_{2}\right) \cap\left(X_{1}, X_{2}-\right.$ $X_{0}$ ).
(ii) (a) The set-theoretic intersection $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ is precisely the line $\ell: X_{2}=0$ and the isolated point $p: X_{1}=X_{2}-X_{0}=0$.
(b) The ideal-theoretic intersection of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ is precisely the line $\ell: X_{2}=0$, the isolated point $P: X_{1}=X_{2}-X_{0}=0$ and the imbedded point $Q_{1}: X_{1}=X_{2}=0$.
(c) The geometric intersection of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ is precisely the line $\ell: X_{2}=0$, the isolated point $P: X_{1}=X_{2}-X_{0}=0$ and two imbedded points $Q_{1}: X_{1}=X_{2}=0, Q_{2}: X_{0}=X_{2}=0$.


(a) Set-theoretic (b) Ideal-theoretic (c) Geometric
(iii)

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{Rad}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right)= & \left(X_{2}, Y_{2}, X_{0}-Y_{0}, X_{1}-Y_{1}\right) \\
& \cap\left(X_{2}-X_{0}, X_{1}, Y_{1}, X_{0}-Y_{0}, X_{2}-Y_{2}\right) \\
= & \mathscr{Y}_{1,2} \cap \mathscr{Y}_{1,1}
\end{aligned}
$$

where

$$
\mathscr{Y}_{1,2}:=\left(X_{2}, Y_{2}, X_{0}-Y_{0}, X_{1}-Y_{1}\right)
$$

and

$$
\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}=\left(X_{2}-X_{0}, X_{1}, Y_{1}, X_{0}-Y_{0}, X_{2}-2\right)
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\delta & =\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)+2=1+1+2=4 \\
d & =\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)+1=1+1=2 \\
t & =1 . \text { Therefore } \delta-d-1=1
\end{aligned}
$$

Following the proof of Step $\rrbracket$ in Chapter II, we get:
(iv)

$$
\begin{aligned}
U\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{1}\right) & =\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ell_{1}\right) \bar{R} \\
& =q_{1,2} \cap \mathscr{O}_{1}
\end{aligned}
$$

where $q_{1,2}=\left(X_{2}^{2}, Y_{2}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}\right)$ is the $\mathscr{Y}_{1,2^{-}}$primary component of $U\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{1}\right)$ and

$$
\mathscr{O}_{1}=\left(X_{2}-X_{0}, Y_{1}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}\right) \cap\left(X_{2}^{2}, Y_{1}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}\right) \cap\left(X_{2}-X_{0}, Y_{2}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}\right)
$$

(v) Let $C_{1}$ be the irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{1,2}$. Then the defining prime ideal of $C$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
\mathscr{Y}(C)= & \left(X_{2}\right) \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right] \text { and } \\
& j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=\text { length of } q_{1,2}=\ell\left(\left(\bar{R} / q_{1,2}\right) \mathscr{Y}_{1,2}\right)=2
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that $t<d$; therefore $\mathscr{O}_{1} \neq \bar{R}$.
Now following the proof of step $\square$ in Chapter II, we get:
(vi) $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{2}\right)=q_{1,1} \cap q_{2} \cap q_{2}^{\prime}$ where $q_{1,1}=\left(X_{2}-X_{0}, Y_{1}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)$ is the $\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$-primary component of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{2}\right)$ and $q_{2}=\left(X_{2}^{2}, Y_{1}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}\right)$ $\left(\right.$ resp. $q_{2}^{\prime}=\left(X_{2}-X_{0}, Y_{2}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}\right)$ is $\mathscr{Y}_{2}=\left(X_{1}, Y_{1}, X_{2}, Y_{2}, X_{0}-\right.$ $\left.Y_{0}\right)\left(\right.$ resp. $\left.\mathscr{Y}_{2}^{\prime}=\left(X_{0}, Y_{0}, X_{2}, Y_{2}, X_{1},-Y_{1}\right)\right)$-primary component of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{2}\right)$
(vii) Let $C_{2}$ be the irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{O}_{1,1}$ and let $C_{3}, C_{4}$ be irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{2}, \mathscr{Y}_{2}^{\prime}$, respectively. Then the defining prime ideals of $C_{2}, C_{3}$ and $C_{4}$ are $\left(X_{2}-X_{0}, X_{1}\right)$, $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}^{2}\right)$ and $\left(X_{2}-X_{0}, X_{2}\right)$ respectively and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{2}\right)=\text { length of } q_{1,1}=1 \\
& j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{3}\right)=\text { lent of } q_{2}=2 \\
& j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{4}\right)=\text { Lent of } q_{3}^{\prime}=1
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}=\mathscr{O}_{2}=\bar{R}$ and therefore there is no step $\square$ in this example
(viii) (a) The required collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap$ $V_{2}$ is:
$C_{1}: X_{2}=0$ the line $\ell$ with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=2$.
$C_{2}: X_{1}=X_{2}-X_{0}=0$ (the isolated point P ) with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{2}\right)=1$.
$C_{3}: X_{1}=X_{2}=0\left(\right.$ the imbedded point $\left.Q_{1}\right)$ with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{3}\right)=2$.
$C_{4}: X_{0}=X_{2}=0\left(\right.$ the geometric imbedded point $\left.Q_{2}\right)$ with

$$
j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{4}\right)=1 .
$$

(b) From (1.35) we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)=3, \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=2$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)=$

1 for all $i=1, \ldots, 4$. therefore we get

$$
6=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{4} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)=6 .
$$

(3.3) Example. Let $V$ be the non-singular curve in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}$, parametrically given by $\left\{s^{4}, s^{3} t, s t^{3}, t^{4}\right\}$ ( see [[26], p.180], [[50], p.126]; [[90], §11] and (0.5))

It is easy to see that the prime ideal of $V$ is

$$
\begin{aligned}
I=\left(X_{0} X_{3}-X_{1} X_{2}, X_{0}^{2} X_{2}-X_{1}^{3}, X_{1} X_{3}^{2}-X_{3}^{2},\right. & \left.X_{0} X_{2}^{2}-X_{1}^{2} X_{3}\right) \\
& \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right] .
\end{aligned}
$$

Let $V_{1} \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}$ be the defined by $X_{0}=X_{1}=0$. Then $I_{1}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right) \subset$ $K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$ is the prime ideal of $V_{1}$. It is easy to see that:
(i) $\left(I+I_{1}\right)=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}^{3}\right)$ is $\mathscr{Y}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right.$, $)$-primary; therefore the intersection $V \cap V_{1}$ has precisely one isolated point $p: X_{0}=X_{1}=$ $X_{2}=0$.
(ii) $\operatorname{Rad}\left(\left(I^{\prime}+I_{1}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right)=\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$, where
$\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, Y_{0}, Y_{1}, Y_{2}, X_{3}-Y_{3}\right)$
$\delta=\operatorname{dim} V+\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+2=1+1+2=4$
$d=\operatorname{dim}\left(V \cap V_{1}\right)+1=1, t=1$. Therefore $t=d$ and $\delta-d-1=2$.
Following the proof of Step $\square$ in Chapter II, we get:
(iii) $U\left(\left[I^{\prime}+I_{1}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{2}=q_{1,1} \cap \mathscr{O}_{1}$ where $q_{1,1}$ is $\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$ primary component of $\left.U\left(\left[I^{\prime}+I_{1}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{2}\right)$ and $\left.\left(\left(I^{\prime}+I^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}\right) \bar{R}\right) \mathscr{\mathscr { Y }}_{1,1}=U\left(\left[I^{\prime}+I_{1}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{2}\right)_{\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}}$. Therefore $\left(q_{1,1}\right) \mathscr{Y}_{1,1}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}^{3}, Y_{0}, Y_{1}, X_{2}-Y_{2}, X_{3}-Y_{3}\right) \bar{R}_{\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}}$
(iv) Let $C_{1}$ be the irreducible component of $V \cap V_{1}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$. Then the defining prime ideal of $C_{1}$ is $\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=\mathscr{Y}$ and

$$
j\left(V, V_{1} ; C_{1}\right) \text { length }\left(q_{1,1}\right)=3
$$

Note that $t=d=1$ therefore their is no Step $\Pi$ in this example. Following Step iII Chapter II, we get $K-\operatorname{dim} U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)=$ $K \operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right)-1=0$ Therefore $q:=U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)=$ $\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)$ is primary ideal corresponding to the homogeneous maximal ideal $\left(X_{0}, Y_{0}, X_{1}, Y_{1}, X_{2}, Y_{2}, X_{3}, Y_{3}\right) \subset \bar{R}$ This primary ideal $q$ gives the empty subvariety $\phi$ in our collection.
(v) (a) The required collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of irreducible subvarieties of $V \cap$ $V_{1}$ is:
$C_{1}: X_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0$ (the isolated point $P$ ) with $j\left(V, V_{1}, C_{1}\right)$ $=3, \phi$ : the empty subvariety with $j\left(V, V_{1} ; \phi\right)=$ length of $(q)$
(b) From (1.43) (iii) and (1.35), we have $\operatorname{deg}(V)=4$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)$ $=1, \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{1}\right)=1$.
(c) Therefor, from the main theorem (2.1) we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
4=\operatorname{deg}(V) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) & =j\left(V, V_{1} ; C_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg} C_{1}+j\left(V, V_{1}, \phi\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}(\phi) \\
& =3+j\left(V, V_{1}, \phi\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that $j\left(V, V_{1}, \phi\right)=$ length of $(q)=1$, so that $q=\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)$ is the homogeneous maximal ideal $\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}, Y_{0}, Y_{1} Y_{2}, Y_{3}\right)$.

The line $V_{1}$ is a tangent line to $V$ at $P$ whose intersection multiplicity with $V$ at $P$ is 3 . In general, the non-singular curves $C_{d} \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}$ defined parametrically by

$$
\left\{s^{d}, s^{d-1} t, s t^{d-1}, t^{d}\right\}, d \geq 4
$$

are of degree $d$ and have a tangent line with a contact of order $d-1$
(3.4) Remark. The empty subvariety $\phi$ is geometric imbedded component of $V \cap V_{1}$ in example (3.3).
(3.5) Example. Let $V \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}$ be the non-singular curve of example (3.3) and $V_{2} \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}$ be the line defined by $X_{0}=X_{2}=0$. Then $I_{2}=\left(X_{0}, X_{2}\right) \subset$ $K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]$ be the prime ideal of $V_{2}$. It is easy to see that:
(i) The primary decomposition of $I+I_{2}$ is given by $I+I_{2}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right)$ $\cap\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{1}^{3}, X_{3}^{2}, X_{1}^{2} X_{3}\right)$ and therefore $\operatorname{Rad}\left(I+I_{2}\right)=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right)$.
(ii) The set-theoretic intersection $V \cap V_{2}$ of $V$ and $V_{2}$ has precisely one isolated point.
(iii) $\operatorname{Rad}\left(\left(I^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right)=\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$ where
$\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, Y_{0}, Y_{1}, Y_{2}, X_{3}-Y_{3}\right)$.
$\delta=\operatorname{dim} V+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}+2=1+1+2=4$
$d=\operatorname{dim}\left(V \cap V_{2}\right)+1=1, t=1$. Therefore $t=d$ and $\delta-d-1=2$.
Following the proof of step $\rrbracket$ is Chapter II, we get:

$$
U\left(\left[\left(I^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{2}\right)=q_{1,1} \cap \mathscr{O}_{1}
$$

where $q_{1,1}$ is $\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$-primary component of $U\left(\left[\left(I^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{2}\right)$ and

$$
\begin{aligned}
\left(q_{1,1}\right)_{\mathscr{Y} 1,1} U\left(\left[\left(I^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{2}\right)_{\mathscr{V}_{1,1}} & =\left(I^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\left(\ell_{0}, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2}\right) \bar{R}_{\mathscr{V}_{1,1}} \\
& =\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, Y_{0}, Y_{1}, Y_{2}, X_{3}-Y_{3}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

(iv) Let $C_{1}$ be the irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$. Then the defining prime ideal of $C_{1}$ is $\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right)=\mathscr{Y}$ and $j\left(V, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=$ length of $q_{1,1}=1$ Note that $t=d=1$; therefore there is no Step $\square$ in this example. Following Step III in Chapter II, we get
$K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)=K-\operatorname{dim} U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)=K-\operatorname{dim}\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}\right)-1=0$.
Therefore $q:=U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)=\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{3}\right)$ is primary ideal corresponding to the homogeneous maximal ideal $\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}, Y_{0}, Y_{1}, Y_{2}\right.$, $\left.Y_{3}\right) \subset \bar{R}$. This primary ideal $q$ gives empty subvariety $\phi$ in our collection
(v) (a) The required collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of irreducible subvarieties of $V \cap V_{2}$ is:
$C_{1}: X_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0$ (the isolated point $P$ ) with $j\left(V, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=1$. $\phi$ : the empty subvariety with $j\left(V, V_{2} ; \phi\right)=$ length of $q$
(b) We have from example (3.3) $\operatorname{deg}(V)=4$ and from (1.35)

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=1, \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{1}\right)=1
$$

(c) Therefore from the main theorem we get

$$
\begin{aligned}
4=\operatorname{deg}(V) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)= & j\left(V, V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{1}\right) \\
& +j\left(V, V_{1}, V_{2} ; \phi\right) \operatorname{deg}(\phi) \\
=1 & +j\left(V, V_{1}, V_{2} ; \phi\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

This shows that $j\left(V, V_{1}, V_{2} ; \phi\right)=$ length of $q=3$.
(3.6) Remark. The empty subvariety $\phi$ is imbedded component of $V \cap$ $V_{2}$ in example (3.5)
(3.7) Example. Let $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ be two hypersurfaces in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{2}$ defined by $F_{1}:=X_{0} X_{1}\left(X_{0}-2 X_{1}\right)=0$ and $F_{2}:=X_{0} X_{1}\left(X_{1}-2 X_{0}\right)=0$. put $I_{1}=\left(F_{1}\right)$ and $I_{2}=\left(F_{2}\right)\left(\subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right]\right)$. It is easy to see that:
(i) The primary decomposition of $I_{1}+I_{2}$ is given by $I_{1}+I_{2}=\left(X_{0}\right) \cap$ $\left(X_{1}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}^{2}, X_{1}^{2}\right)$ and therefore $\operatorname{Rad}\left(I_{1}+I_{2}\right)=\left(x_{0}\right) \cap\left(X_{1}\right)$.
(ii) (a) The set-theoretic intersection $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ is precisely the two lines $\ell_{0}: X_{0}=0$ and $\ell_{1}: X_{1}=0$.
(b) The ideal-theoretic intersection of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ is precisely the two lines $\ell_{0}: X_{0}=0 \ell_{1}: X_{1}=0$ and the imbedded point $P: X_{0}=$ $X_{1}=0$
(iii) $\operatorname{Rad}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right)=\mathscr{Y}_{1,2} \cap \mathscr{Y}_{2,2} \cap \mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$ where
$\mathscr{Y}_{1,2}=\left(X_{0}, Y_{0}, X_{1}-Y_{1}, X_{2}-Y_{2}\right), \mathscr{Y}_{2,2}=\left(X_{1}, Y_{1}, X_{0}-Y_{0}, X_{2}-Y_{2}\right)$ and
$\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, Y_{0}-Y_{1}, X_{2}-Y_{2}\right)$.
$\delta=\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}+2=1+1+2=4$
$d=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)+1=2, t=1$ therefore $\delta-d-1=1$
Following the proof of Step $\rrbracket$ in Chapter II, we get:
(iv) $\cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{1}\right)=q_{1,2} \cap q_{2,2} \cap \mathscr{O}_{1}$, where $q_{1,2}$ (resp. $\left.q_{2,2}\right)$ is $\mathscr{Y}_{1,2}-\left(\mathscr{Y}_{2,2}\right)$ - primary component of $U\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{1}\right)$ In fact, $q_{1,2}=$ $\left(X_{0}, Y_{0}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}\right), q_{2,2}=\left(X_{1}, Y_{1}, \ell_{0}, \ell_{1}\right)$
(iv) Let $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ be irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}_{1,2}$ and $\mathscr{Y}_{2,2}$. Then the defining prime ideals of $C_{1}$ and $C_{2}$ are $\left(X_{0}\right)$ and $\left(X_{1}\right)$, respectively and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=$ length of $q_{1,2}=1, j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{2}\right)=$ length of $q_{2,2}=1$,,
Note that $t<d$ : therefore $\mathscr{O}_{1} \neq \bar{R}$.
Following the proof of step $\square$ is Chapter II we get:
(v) $q:=U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{2}\right)=\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{2}\right)$ is $\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$ - primary ideal. Let $C_{3}$ be the irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$. Then the defining prime ideal of $C_{3}$ is $\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right)$ and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{3}\right)=$ length of $(q)$.
(vi) (a) The required collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ is:
$C_{1}: X_{0}=0$ (the line $\ell_{0}$ ) with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=1$
$C_{2}: X_{1}=0$ (the line $\ell_{1}$ ) with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{2}\right)=1$
$C_{3}: X_{0}=X_{1}=0($ the imbedded point P$)$ with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{3}\right)=\ell(q)$
(b) From (1.35) we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=3$ and $\operatorname{deg} C_{i}=1$ for all $i=1,2,3$.
(c) from the main theorem (2.1) we get $9=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=$ $\sum_{i=1}^{3} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)=2+j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{3}\right)$.

Therefore $\ell(q)=j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{3}\right)=7$
This example was also studied by $W$. Fulton and $R$. MacPherson in [[19], p.10]
(3.8) Example. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}=\left(X_{4}, X_{3}^{3}-X_{1} X_{2}\left(X_{2}-\right.\right.$ $\left.2 X_{1}\right)$ ) and $I_{2}=\left(X_{3}, X_{4}^{3}-X_{1} X_{2}\left(X_{1}-2 X_{2}\right)\right) \subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}, X_{4}\right]$. Following the proof of the main theorem (2.1) it is easy to see that:
(a)The required collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ is given by:.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& C_{1}: X_{1}=X_{3}=X_{4}=0(\text { the line }) \text { with } j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=1 \\
& C_{2}: X_{1}=X_{3}=X_{4}=0 \text { (the line) with } j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{2}\right)=1
\end{aligned}
$$

## $C_{3}: X_{1}=X_{2}=X_{3}=X_{4}=0$ (the imbedded point) with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{3}\right)=7$.

(b) From (1.35) we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=3$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)=$ 1 for $i=1,2,3$. Therefore

$$
9=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{3} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right) .
$$

(3.9) Remark. The example (3.8) was also studied by $W$. Fulton and $R$. MacPherson, (see [[19],p.10]) This example illuminates our problem 6 below as follows:

Use the diagram for $X:=V_{1}$ and $Y:=V_{2}$

the origin $P$ is a so-called distinguished variety in the theory of Fulton and MacPherson, its contribution to the multiplicity is 3, each line also contributes 3 to the Bezout's number $\operatorname{deg}(X) . \operatorname{deg}(Y)=9$.

In view of the problem 6 below, we want to consider another diagram. Using the diagram

then we get the intersection numbers $7,1,1$ (7 at the point $P$ ) by applying the theory of Fulton and MacPherson. Our method also assigns the multiplicity 7 to the origin $P$ and 1 to each line.

A simpler example in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{2}$ is the following: Let $X$ and $Y$ be given by $X_{1} X_{2}=0$ and $X_{1}=0$,resp. Then $X \cap Y$ is the line $X_{1}=0$. Applying again the theory of Fulton and MacPherson, we will construct intersection from the diagram


Then only $Y$ is a distinguished variety and counts twice. Construct intersection from the diagram


Then $Y$ and the origin are distinguished varieties each contributes 1. In our theory, the origin is also a so-called distinguished variety and its contribution to the multiplicity is 1 , the line $X_{1}=0$ also contributes 1 to the Bezout's number $\operatorname{deg}(X) \operatorname{deg}(Y)=2$.

Therefore we want to study the following example:
(3.10) Example. Let $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ be two hypersurfaces in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{2}$ defined by $F_{1}:=X_{1} X_{2}$ and $F_{2}:=X_{1}^{n}=0$

Following the proof of the main theorem (2.1) it is easy to see that:
(a) The required collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ is:
$C_{1}: X_{1}=0$ (the line) with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=n$
$C_{2}: X_{1}=X_{2}=0$ (the imbedded points) with $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{2}\right)=n$
(b) From (1.35), we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)=2, \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=n$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)=1$ for $i=1,2$.
Therefore $2 n=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{2} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)$
(3.11) Example. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two subvarieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ with $V_{1} \cap V_{2}=\phi$ (for example, the lines $\ell_{0}: X_{0}=X_{1}=0$ and $\ell_{1}: X_{2}=X_{3}=0$ in $\left.\mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}\right)$. Following the proof of the main theorem
it is easy to see that: $d=0, \delta-d-1=\delta-1 \leq n$ and $U\left(\left[I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right]_{-1}\right)=q$ is primary for the homogeneous maximal ideal $\left(X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}, Y_{0}, \ldots, Y_{n}\right)$. Therefore the required collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ is just the empty subvariety $\phi$ and by the main Theorem (2.1), we get

$$
j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; \phi\right)=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)
$$

(3.12) Remark. Let $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ be as in example (3.11). Let $C\left(V_{1}\right)$ (resp. $C\left(V_{2}\right)$ ) be the projective cone over $V_{1}$ (resp. over $V_{2}$ ) in $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n+1}$. Then $C\left(V_{1}\right) \cap C\left(V_{2}\right)$ is given by one point say $P: X_{0}=\cdots=X_{n}=0$. It is possible to show that

$$
j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; \phi\right)=j\left(C\left(V_{1}\right), C\left(V_{2}\right) ; P\right)
$$

102 which does provided a geometrical interpretation of the intersection number $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; \phi\right)$.

## (3.13)

Let $V_{1}, V_{2}$ and $V_{3} \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{3}$ be three hypersurfaces defined by $F_{1}:=X_{0} X_{1}$, $F_{2}: X_{0} X_{2}$ and $F_{3}: X_{0} X_{3}$, respectively. Put $I_{1}=\left(F_{1}\right), I_{2}=\left(F_{2}\right)$ and $I_{3}=\left(F_{3}\right)\left(\subset K\left[X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right]\right)$. It is easy to see that:
(i) The primary decomposition of $I_{1}+I_{2}+I_{3}$ is given by $I_{1}+I_{2}+I_{3}=$ $\left(X_{0}\right) \cap\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)$ and $\operatorname{Rad}\left(I_{1}+I_{2}+I_{3}\right)=\left(X_{0}\right) \cap\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)$. Therefore the intersection $V_{1} \cap V_{2} \cap V_{3}$ is precisely one surface $C: X_{0}=0$ and the isolated point $P: X_{1}=X_{2}=X_{3}=0$.
Note that we cannot apply the main theorem (2.1) to this example but we can apply the general main theorem (2.25)] We preserve the notation of [56]. For simplicity, put $X_{i j}=X_{j}, X_{2 j}=$ $Y_{j} \operatorname{and} X_{3 j}=Z_{j}$ for $j=0, \ldots, 3$.
(ii) $\operatorname{Rad}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+I_{3}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}+\tau \bar{R}\right)=\mathscr{Y}_{1,3} \cap \mathscr{Y}_{1,1}$ where $\mathscr{Y}_{1,3}=\left(X_{0}, Y_{0}, Z_{0}, X_{1}-\right.$ $\left.Y_{1}, X_{1}-Z_{1}, X_{2}-Z_{2}, X_{3}-Y_{3}, X_{3},-Z_{3}\right)$ and
$\mathscr{Y}_{1,1}=\left(X_{1}, Y_{1}, Z_{1}, X_{2}, Y_{2}, Z_{2}, X_{3}, Y_{3}, Z_{3}, X_{0},-Y_{0}, X_{0},-Z_{0}\right)$ and
$\delta=\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}+\operatorname{dim} V_{3}+3=2+2+2+3=9$,
$\delta=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2} \cap V_{3}\right)+1=3, t=1$. Therefore $\delta-d-1=$ $9-3-1=5$
Following the proof of Step $\square$ of [[56], (2.1)], we get:
(iii) $U\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+I_{3}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{5}\right)=q_{1,3} \cap \mathscr{O}_{1}$ where $q_{1,3}=\left(X_{0}, Y_{0}, Z_{0}, \ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{5}\right)$ is the $\mathscr{O}_{1,3}$ primary component of $U\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+I_{3}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{5}\right)$
(iv) Let $C_{1}$ be the irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2} \cap V_{3}$ corresponding to the prime ideal $\mathscr{O}_{1,3}$. Then the defining prime ideal of $C_{1}$ is $\left(X_{0}\right)$ and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2}, V_{3} ; c_{1}\right)=$ length of $q_{1,3}=1$. Following the proof of Step [II of [56], (2.1)] we get:
(v) $\cup\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{6}\right)=q_{1}^{1} \cap q_{1}^{2} \cap q_{1}^{3} \cap \mathscr{O}_{2}$ where $q_{1}^{1}$ (resp. $\left.q_{1}^{2}, q_{1}^{3}\right)$ is $\left(X_{1}, Y_{0}, Z_{0}\right)+$ $\tau \bar{R}$ (resp. $\left.\left(X_{0}, Y_{2}, Y_{0}\right)+\tau \bar{R}\left(X_{0}, Y_{0}, Z_{3}\right)+\tau \bar{R}\right)$-primary components of $U\left(\mathscr{O}_{1}, \ell_{6}\right)$. Let $C_{2}, C_{3}$ and $C_{4}$ be irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2} \cap$ $V_{3}$ corresponding to the prime ideals ( $X_{1}, Y_{0}, Z_{0}$ ) $+\tau \bar{R}\left(X_{0}, Y_{2}, Z_{0}\right)+$ $\tau \bar{R}$ and ( $X_{0}, Y_{0}, Z_{3}$ ) $+\tau \bar{R}$ respectively. Then the defining prime ideals of $C_{2}, C_{3}$ and $C_{4}$ are $\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right),\left(X_{0}, X_{2}\right)$ and $\left(X_{0}, X_{3}\right)$, respectively and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2}, C_{i}\right)=1$ for $i=2,3,4$.
(vi) $\cup\left(\mathscr{O}_{2}, \ell_{7}\right)=q_{1}^{1} \cap q_{1}^{2} \cap q_{1}^{3} \cap q_{1}^{4}$ where
$q_{1}^{1}=\left(X_{0}, Y_{2}, Z_{3}\right)+\tau \bar{R} q_{1}^{2}=\left(X_{1}, Y_{0}, Z_{3}\right)+\tau \bar{R} q_{1}^{3}=\left(X_{0}, Y_{2}, Z_{0}\right)+\tau \bar{R}$ and
$q_{1}^{4}=\left(X_{0}, Y_{2}, Z_{3}\right)+\tau \bar{R}$
Note that $d-t+1=3$ and $\mathscr{O}_{d-t+1}=\mathscr{O}_{3}=\bar{R}$. Let $C_{5}, C_{6}, C_{7}$ and $C_{8}$ be irreducible. subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2} \cap V_{3}$ corresponding to $q_{1}^{1}, q_{1}^{2}, q_{1}^{3}$ and $q_{1}^{4}$, respectively. Then the defining prime ideals of $C_{5}, C_{6}, C_{7}$ and $C_{8}$ are $\left(X_{0}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right),\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{3}\right),\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}\right)$, and $\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right)$ respectively and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2}, V_{3}, C_{i}\right)=1$ for $i=5,6,7,8$.
(vii) (a) The required collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ is:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& C_{1}: X_{0}=0 \quad \text { (the surface) } \\
& C_{2}: X_{0}=X_{1}=0 \\
& C_{3}: X_{0}=X_{2}=0 \\
& C_{4}: X_{0}=X_{3}=0 \\
& C_{5}: X_{0}=X_{2}=X_{3}=0 \\
& C_{6}: X_{0}=X_{1}=X_{3}=0 \\
& C_{7}: X_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0 \\
& C_{8}: X_{1}=X_{2}=X_{3}=0 \quad \text { (the isolated point) }
\end{aligned}
$$

and $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right)=1$ for all $i=1, \ldots, 8$.
(b) From (1.35) we have
$\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{i}\right)=2$ for all $i=1,2,3$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)=1$ for all $i=1, \ldots, 8$.
Therefore we get $8=\prod_{i=1}^{3} \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{i}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{8} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{i}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right)$.
(3.14) Examples. (i) Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{7}$ be defined by $I_{1}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right) \cap\left(X_{2}, X_{3}\right) \cap\left(X_{4}, X_{5}\right) \cap\left(X_{6}, X_{7}\right)$ and $I_{2}=\left(X_{0}+\right.$ $X_{2}, X_{4}+X_{6}$ ). Then the primary decomposition of $I_{1}+I_{2}$ is given by

$$
\begin{gathered}
I_{1}+I_{2}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{4}+X_{6}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}, X_{2}, X_{3}, X_{4}+X_{6}\right) \\
\cap\left(X_{4}, X_{5}, X_{6}, X_{0}+X_{2}\right) \cap\left(X_{4}, X_{6}, X_{7}, X_{0}+X_{2}\right) \\
\cap\left(X_{0}^{2}, X_{2}^{2}, X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{1}, X_{3}, X_{4}+X_{6}\right)\left(X_{4}^{2}, X_{6}^{2}, X_{4}+X_{6}, X_{5}, X_{7}, X_{0},+X_{2}\right) .
\end{gathered}
$$

Using the notation of (2.30) we have

$$
m=4, \ell=6
$$

We also have $3=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-7=5+$
$5-7=3$ and from (1.40) and (1.35) $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)=4, \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=1$. Therefore $4=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \nsucceq \ell-1=5$. This example shows that Question 1 of (2.30) is not true in general.
(ii) Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{4}$ be defined by $I_{1}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right) \cap$ $\left(X_{2}, X_{3}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{4}\right)$ and $I_{2}=\left(X_{0}+X_{2}\right)$. Then the primary decomposition of $I_{1}+I_{2}$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_{1}+I_{2}=\left(X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{4}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}, X_{1},\right. & \left.X_{2}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}, X_{2}, X_{3}\right) \\
& \cap\left(X_{0}^{2}, X_{2}^{2}, X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{1}, X_{3}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $m=1$ and $\ell=4$
Also $2=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)>\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-4=2+3-4=1$ and $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)=3, \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=1$ by (1.39) and (1.34). Therefore $3=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \nsupseteq \ell=4$.

This example shows that Question 2 of (2.30) is not true in general.
(iii) Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right) \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{7}$ be defined by $I_{1}=\left(X_{0}^{2}, X_{1}\right) \cap$ $\left(X_{2}, X_{3}\right) \cap\left(X_{4}, X_{5}\right) \cap\left(X_{6}, X_{7}\right)$ and $i_{2}=\left(X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{4}+X_{6}\right)$. The primary decomposition of $I_{1}+I_{2}$ is given by

$$
\begin{aligned}
I_{1}+I_{2}= & \left(X_{0}^{2}, X_{1}, X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{4}+X_{6}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}, X_{2}, X_{3}, X_{4}+X_{6}\right) \\
& \cap\left(X_{4}, X_{5}, X_{6}, X_{0}+X_{2}\right) \cap\left(X_{4}, X_{6}, X_{7}, X_{0}+X_{2}\right) \cap \\
\left(X_{0}^{3}, X_{0}^{3}, X_{1},\right. & \left.X_{3}, X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{4},+X_{6}\right) \cap\left(X_{4}^{3}, X_{6}^{2}, X_{5}, X_{7}, X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{4}+X_{6}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

Therefore $m=4$ and $\ell=6$. From (1.40) and (1.35) we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)=5, \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=1$. Therefore $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)>m$ but $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \nsucceq \ell$. This example shows that Question 3 of (2.30) is not true in general.

## B. Applications of the Main Theorem

The purpose of this section is to show that the main theorem (2.1) also yields Bezout's Theorem.

We preserve the notation of Chapter II. In addition, the following notation will be used in sequel.
(3.15) Notation. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}:=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with the defining prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}(C)=\mathscr{Y}$. Let $q(C)=q$ be the primary component of $I_{1}+I_{2}$. we put:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right):=\text { length of } q=\ell\left(\left(R_{0} / I_{1}+I_{2}\right) \mathscr{Y}\right) \text { and } \\
& e\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right):=e_{0}\left(q\left(R_{0}\right) \mathscr{Y} ;\left(R_{0}\right) \mathscr{Y}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Using (2.3) (iii), we get the isolated prime ideal $P($ resp. $\bar{P})$ of $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+\right.$ $\left.I_{2}^{\prime}+\tau\right) R\left(\right.$ resp. $\left.\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+\tau\right) \bar{R}\right)-$ Let $Q($ resp. $\bar{Q})$ be the $P($ resp. $\bar{P})-$ primary component of $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+\tau\right) R$ (resp. $\left.\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+\tau\right) \bar{R}\right)$. Let $A=$ $\left(R /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right)\right)_{P}\left(\right.$ resp. $\bar{A}=\left(\bar{R} /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right)\right)_{\bar{P}}$ be the local ring of the joinvariety $J\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)\left(\right.$ resp. $\left.\bar{J}\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)\right)$ at $P($ resp. $\bar{P})$.
(3.16) Remarks. (i) Note that $\bar{P}=\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ for some prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}_{i, j}$ in (*) of (2.4), where $j=K-\operatorname{dim}(C)$.
(ii)

$$
\begin{aligned}
& e_{0}(\tau A ; A)=e_{0}(Q A ; A) \text { and } \\
& e_{0}(\tau \bar{A} ; \bar{A})=e_{0}(\bar{Q} \bar{A} ; A)
\end{aligned}
$$

(iii)

$$
\begin{aligned}
e_{0}(\tau A ; A) & =e_{0}(\tau \bar{A} ; \bar{A}) \text { and } \\
e_{0}(Q A ; A) & =e_{0}(\bar{Q} \cdot \bar{A} ; \bar{A})
\end{aligned}
$$

$\mathbf{1 0 7}$ Proof. (ii) We have $(Q A)^{n}=\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+\tau\right) A\right)^{n}=(\tau A)^{n}$ for all $n \geq 1$, so that $\ell\left(A /(Q A)^{n}\right)=\ell\left(A /(\tau A)^{n}\right)$ for all $n \geq 1$. Therefore $E_{0}(Q A, A)=$ $e_{0}(\tau A, A)$. Similarly, $e_{0}(\bar{Q} \cdot \bar{A} ; \bar{A})=e_{0}(\tau \bar{A} ; \bar{A})$.
(iii) This follows from the remark (i) of (1.2)
(3.17) Remark. If $C$ is a proper component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$, that is, $C$ is irreducible and $\operatorname{dim}(C)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n$,then the Weil's intersection multiplicity symbol $i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ is given by

$$
i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=e_{0}(\tau A ; A)
$$

Proof. See [[69] ; ch. II, §5, a]
(3.18) Lemma. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}:=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap$ $V_{2}$. Then $\left.\left.j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=e_{0}\left(\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A} ; \bar{A}\right)=\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}\right)-$ $\ell\left(\frac{\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right): \ell_{\delta-j-1}}{\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right) \bar{A}}\right)$ where $j=K-\operatorname{dim}(C)$.
Proof. This follows from (2.20, (2.8) and (1.23).

## (3.19) Corollary.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& J\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)+\ell\left(\tau \bar{A} /\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}\right) \\
&-\ell\left(\frac{\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right): \ell_{\delta-j-1}}{\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right) \bar{A}}\right)
\end{aligned}
$$

108 Proof. We have $\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=\ell(\bar{A} / \tau \bar{A})$. Therefore this corollary follows from 3.18.

We put
and

$$
\begin{aligned}
& K_{1}:=\ell\left(\tau \bar{A} /\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) A\right) \\
& K_{2}:=\frac{\left(\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right): \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}}{\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-2}\right) \bar{A}}
\end{aligned}
$$

(3.20) Corollary. (i) Suppose that the local rings $A\left(V_{i} ; C\right)$ of $V_{i}$ at $C$ are Cohen-Macaulay for $i=1,2$. Then $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ and equality holds if and only if $\tau \bar{A} \subset\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}$
(ii) If $\tau \bar{A} \subset\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}$ then $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \leq \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ and equality holds if and only if $A\left(V_{1} ; C\right)$ and $A\left(V_{2} ; C\right)$ are CohenMacaulay. (Note that $\tau \bar{A} \subset\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}$ when $\operatorname{dim} C=\operatorname{dim}$ $\left.V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n\right)$.

Proof. (i) From the proposition (3.21 below, it follows that $\bar{A}$ is Cohen -Macaulay. Therefore (i) results from (3.19).
(ii) Follows from (3.19) and the following proposition (3.21).

We study the connecting between the Cohen -Macaulay properties of $A\left(V_{i} ; C\right)$ and $\bar{A}$ in the following proposition.
(3.21) Proposition. The notations being the same as (2.2) and (3.18). The following conditions are equivalent:
(i) $A\left(V_{1} ; C\right)$ and $A\left(V_{2} ; C\right)$ are Cohen -Macaulay
(ii) $\bar{A}$ is Cohen-Macaulay.
(iii) $\left(\bar{K}\left[X_{10}, \ldots, X_{1 n}, X_{20}, \ldots, X_{2 n}\right] /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right)\right)_{\mathscr{Y}_{(C)^{\prime}+\mathscr{Y}_{(C)^{\prime \prime}}} \text { is Cohen-Mac- }}$ aulay, where $\mathscr{Y}(C)^{\prime}$; and $\mathscr{Y}(C)^{\prime \prime}$ are prime ideals in $R_{1}$ and $R_{2}$, respectively corresponding to $\mathscr{Y}(C)$.

Proof. (ii) $\Rightarrow$ (iii). Since $\mathscr{Y}(C)^{\prime}+\mathscr{Y}(C)^{\prime \prime} \subset \mathscr{Y}+\tau$, the local ring of (iii) is a localization of $\bar{A}$ and hence Cohen -Macaulay.
(iii) $\Rightarrow$ (i). This is proved by $R$. Achilles. This proof is not so easy, since he uses Samuel's techniques on the extension of fields of definition (see [[69], ch. II, §1, No. 3 and 4]). Therefore, for the proof, see the forthcoming thesis (Promotion B) of R. Achilles.
(i) $\Rightarrow$ (ii). By (1.44), there exist elements $f \in A\left(V_{1}\right) g \in A\left(V_{2}\right)$ such that $A\left(V_{1}\right)_{f}$ and $A\left(V_{2}\right)_{g}$ are Cohen-Macaulay $\left(A\left(V_{i}\right)\right.$ denote the coordinates ring of $V_{i}, i=1,2$ ). It follows immediately from (1.47) (iv)(a) that

$$
A\left(V_{1}\right)_{f} \underset{K}{\otimes} A\left(V_{2}\right)_{g} \text { is Cohen -Macaulay. }
$$

Now, put $S=\left\{f^{n} \underset{K}{\otimes} g^{m} \mid n, m \in \mathbb{N}\right\}$. Then $S$ is a multiplicative set in $A\left(V_{1}\right) \underset{K}{\otimes} A\left(V_{2}\right)$ and it is easy to see that $S^{-1}\left(A\left(V_{1}\right) \underset{K}{\otimes} A\left(V_{2}\right)\right) \underset{\rightarrow}{\sim} A\left(V_{1}\right)_{f} \underset{K}{\otimes}$ $A\left(V_{2}\right)_{g}$. Therefore

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \left.\bar{K} \underset{K}{\otimes} A\left(V_{1}\right)\right)_{f} \underset{\bar{K}}{\otimes}\left(\bar{K} \underset{K}{\otimes} A\left(V_{2}\right)\right)_{g} \widetilde{\rightarrow}\left(\bar{K}\left[X_{10}, \ldots, X_{1 n}\right] / I_{1}^{\prime}\right)_{f} \underset{\bar{K}}{\otimes} \\
& \left.\left(\bar{K}\left[X_{20}, \ldots, X_{2 n}\right]\right) / I_{2}^{\prime}\right)_{g} \underset{\rightarrow}{\sim}\left(\bar{K}\left[X_{10}, \ldots, X_{1 n}, x_{20}, \ldots, X_{2 n}\right] /\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right)\right)_{f g}
\end{aligned}
$$

110 is Cohen-Macaulay. Note that $f . g \notin \mathscr{Y}(C)+\tau$, therefore $\bar{A}$ is a localization of $\left(\bar{K}\left[X_{10}, \ldots, X_{1 n}, X_{20}, \ldots, X_{2 n}\right] / I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right)_{f g}$ and hence $\bar{A}$ is Cohen -Macaulay.
(3.22) Proposition. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. Then

$$
j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=e_{0}(\tau \bar{A}, \bar{A})=e_{0}(\bar{Q} \cdot \bar{A} ; \bar{A})
$$

In particular, if $C$ is a proper component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$, that is, $\operatorname{dim}(C)=$ $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n$, then

$$
j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=e_{0}(\tau \bar{A}, \bar{A})=i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)
$$

Proof. In view of 3.16 (ii) and (3.18, it is enough to prove that: $e_{0}\left(\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A} ; \bar{A}\right)=e_{0}(\tau \bar{A} ; \bar{A})$. Since $\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}$ are generic linear forms we see from the proof of [[51], Theorem [69]] that $\ell_{0}, \ldots$, $\ell_{\delta-j-1}$ is a "superficial sequence" of order 1 for $\tau \bar{A}=\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{n}\right) \bar{A}$. Therefore from [[51], Theorem [71]] we get

$$
e_{0}\left(\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A} ; \bar{A}\right)=e_{0}\left(\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{n}\right) \bar{A} ; \bar{A}\right)=e_{0}(\tau \bar{A} ; \bar{A})
$$

(3.23) Remark. Proposition (3.22) does yield a connection between our definition of intersection multiplicity and Samuel's observations on improper components given in his thesis (see: $J$. Math.Pures Appl. (9), 30 (1951)-274 in particular chapter $V$, section 2), see also [[69], ch. II, §5, No. 9].
(3.24) Proposition . Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}:=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Suppose that $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=$ $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n$. Then $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{C} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C)$, where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$.

For the proof of this proposition, we need the following lemma.
(3.25) Lemma. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}:=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Then the following conditions are equivalent:
(i) $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n$
(ii) Every irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ has dimension $\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+$ $\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$.
(iii) $\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+\tau \bar{R}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right)-(n+1)\right.$.

Proof. We prove (i) $\Rightarrow$ (iii) $\Rightarrow$ (ii)
From (i) we have $\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}+\tau\right) \bar{R}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+$ $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n=\operatorname{dim}\left(\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}-1-n\right.$, that is, we have (iii).
(iii) $\Rightarrow$ (ii) Follows from the fact that $\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}$ is unmixed (see (2.3)(i)) and (1.46) (ii). (ii) $\Rightarrow$ (i) is trivial.

Proof of Proposition (3.24). From Lemma (3.25), we have $t=d$ and $\delta-d-1=n$. Hence we get from the Step $\square$ of our proof of the main theorem (2.1) that

$$
\cup\left(\left[\left(I_{1}^{\prime}+I_{2}^{\prime}\right) \bar{R}\right]_{n}\right)=q_{1, d} \cap \cdots \cap q_{m_{d}, d} \cap \mathscr{O}_{1} .
$$

Therefore, since $\mathscr{O}_{1} \not \chi_{i, d}$ for any $1 \leq i \leq m_{d}$, we get $\mathscr{O}=\bar{R}$. Hence $\left\{C \mid C\right.$ an irreducible component of $\left.V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right\}$ is the required collection in the main theorem (2.1) Then (3.24) follows from the main theorem (2.1)

The following proposition yields a new and simple proof of the wellknown Bezout's theorem.

## (3.26) Proposition (Bezout's Theorem)

Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}:=K$ $\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Suppose that $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n\right.$. Then $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \quad=\quad \sum_{C}$
$i\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}(C)$ where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$.

Proof. Follows from (3.24) and (3.22).
(3.27) Remark. In [72] Serre gave an elegant formula for the intersection multiplicity with correction terms to the naive guess which takes only the length of primary ideals (see our discussion of chapter 0 , section $A$ ). In a sense this Tor-formula of Serre explains why the naive guess fails. Another explanation is given by $W$. Fulton and $R$. MacPherson in [[19], §4]. Also, our approach does give the reason for this phenomenon. Our correction term is given by $K_{2}$ (See the notation after the proof of Corollary (3.19). Roughly speaking, our construction shows that we have to drop the imbedded components. Furthermore, we open the way to deeper study by applying our results (3.19) and (3.22). For example, it follows immediately from Corollary (3.20 (ii) the wellknown fact that

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \leq \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)
$$

when $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)=\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$. In case $\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)>$ $\operatorname{dim} V_{1}+\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$, we obtain the following results.
(3.28) Proposition. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}:=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Assume that the local rings $A\left(V_{1} ; C\right)$ and $A\left(V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ at $C$ are Cohen -Macaulay for all irreducible components $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $\operatorname{dim} C=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)$. Then

$$
\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \geq \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)
$$

Proof. From the main theorem (2.1) we get:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) & =\sum_{C_{i}} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right) \\
& \geq \sum_{C} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C) \\
& \geq \sum_{C} \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C) \text { by (3.20) (i) } \\
& =\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right) \quad \text { by (1.40) }
\end{aligned}
$$

where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. with $\operatorname{dim}(C)=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)$.
(3.29) Corollary . With the same assumption as in (3.28), we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)-\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right) \geq \sum_{C} \operatorname{deg}(C) \geq$ number of irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $\operatorname{dim} C<\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right)$.
(3.30) Proposition. Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $V_{2}=V\left(I_{2}\right)$ be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}:=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$. Assume that the local rings $A\left(V_{1} ; C\right)$ and $A\left(V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ at $C$ are Cohen-Macaulay for all irreducible components $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. Then $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \geq \sum_{C} \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2}, ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C)$, where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$, and equality holds if and only if $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2}: C\right)$ for all irreducible components $C$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ and $\left\{C_{i}\right\}=\{C \mid C$ an irreducible component of $\left.V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right\}$.
(3.31) Corollary . With the same assumption as in 3.30, we have $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)-\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1} \cap V_{2}\right) \geq \sum \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C)$, where $C$ runs
through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $\operatorname{dim}(C)<\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1} \cap\right.$ $V_{2}$ ).

## C. Problems

Let $V_{1}=V\left(I_{1}\right)$ and $\left.V_{2}=V\right) I_{2}$ ) be two pure dimensional projective varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ defined by homogeneous ideals $I_{1}$ and $I_{2}$ in $R_{0}:=K\left[X_{0}, \ldots, X_{n}\right]$.

## (3.32) The Main Problem

115 Analyzing the proof of the main theorem (2.1) and the example (3.14), one might be tempted to ask the following question:

Let $C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ be an irreducible subvariety corresponding to an imbedded prime ideal $\mathscr{Y}$ belonging to $I_{1}+I_{2}$. If $\operatorname{dim} C \geq \operatorname{dim} V_{1}+$ $\operatorname{dim} V_{2}-n$, then $C$ belongs to our collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of the main theorem (2.1) However, this is not so, as we will show by the following example:

The construction is due to $R$. Achilles.
Let $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ ve two surfaces in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{4}$ given by the following ideals

$$
\begin{aligned}
& I_{1}=\left(X_{0}, X_{1}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}, X_{2}\right) \cap\left(X_{2}, X_{3}\right) \text { and } \\
& I_{2}=\left(X_{1}, X_{4}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}^{2}, X_{0}+X_{2}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then we have the following primary decomposition of $I_{1}+I_{2}: I_{1}+$ $I_{2}=\left(X_{0}, X_{2}\right) \cap\left(X_{0}, X_{1}, X_{4}\right) \cap\left(X_{1}, X_{2}, X_{3}, X_{4}\right) \cap\left(X_{0} X_{2}, X_{0}+X_{2}, X_{1}, X_{3}\right)$.

Applying proposition 1.46), (ii) it is not too difficult to show that the collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of irreducible subvarieties of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ is given by:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
C_{1}: X_{0}=X_{2}=0 & \text { with } & j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=2 \\
C_{2}: X_{0}=X_{1}=X_{4}=0 & \text { with } & j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{2}\right)=1 \\
C_{3}: X_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=0 & \text { with } & j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{3}\right)=2 \\
C_{4}: X_{0}=X_{2}=X_{3}=0 & \text { with } & j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{4}\right)=2 \\
C_{5}: X_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=X_{4}=0 & \text { with } & j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{5}\right)=1 \\
C_{6}: X_{1}=X_{2}=X_{3}=X_{4}=0 & \text { with } & j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{6}\right)=1
\end{array}
$$

Therefore, the imbedded point $X_{0}=X_{1}=X_{2}=X_{3}=0$ of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ is not an element of $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$.

Note that, the correction term $c\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)>0$ (See notation of (2.8), (ii)).

Of course, it would be very interesting to say something about how imbedded components contribute to the Bezout's number $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}$ $\left(V_{2}\right)$. This is our main problem.
(3.33) Problem 1. Give reasonably sharp estimate between $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)$. $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)$ and $\sum_{C} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C)$ where $C$ runs through all irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$
(3.34) Remark. It seems to us a rather hard question to give reasonably sharp estimates on the error term between $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)$ and $\sum_{C} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \operatorname{deg}(C)$ or even $\sum_{C} \operatorname{deg}(C)$.

In 1982, Lazarsfeld was able to show that if one intersects a linear space $L$ in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ with a subvariety $V \subset \mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}(V$ is irreducible and non- degenerate) and $C_{1}, \ldots, C_{r}$ are the irreducible components of $L \cap V$, then

$$
\sum_{i=1}^{r} \operatorname{deg} C_{i} \leq \operatorname{deg}(V)-e
$$

where $e=\operatorname{dim}(L \cap V)-\operatorname{dim} V+\operatorname{codim} L$.
His proof is rather complicated. Therefore we want to pose our 117 second problem.
(3.35) Problem 2. Would our methods yield similar results as in 3.34?
(3.36) Problem 3. (a) If $c\left(V_{1}, V_{2}\right)>0$ then is it true that: $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right)$. $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \geq$ number of associated primes of $I_{1}+I_{2}$ ?
(b) Assume that $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ are reduced. If $\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) d \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)>$ number of irreducible components of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ then is it true that:
$\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \cdot \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right) \geq$ number of associated primes of $I_{1}+I_{2}$ ?
(3.37) Remark. The assumption "reduced" is necessary in Problem 3(b) (see example (3.14) (iii)).
(3.38) Problem 4. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$ with $K-\operatorname{dim}(C)=j, t \leq j \leq d$. Give geometric (or algebraic ) interpretation of the property:

$$
\tau \bar{A} \subset\left(\ell_{0}, \ldots, \ell_{\delta-j-1}\right) \bar{A}
$$

In connection with Corollary 3.20, we want to pose the following problem:
(3.39) Problem 5. Let $C$ be an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cap V_{2}$. If $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ or $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \leq \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$, then describe the structure of the local rings $A\left(V_{1} ; C\right)$ and $A\left(V_{2} ; C\right)$ of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ at $C$.
(3.40) Remarks. (i) If $A\left(V_{1}, C\right)$ and $A\left(V_{2} ; C\right)$ are Cohen -Macaulay. then $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \geq \ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$.
(ii) If $\operatorname{dim} V_{1} \cap V_{2}=\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{1}\right)+\operatorname{dim}\left(V_{2}\right)-n$, then $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)=$ $\ell\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right)$ if and only if $A\left(V_{1} ; C\right)$ and $A\left(V_{2} ; C\right)$ are Cohen-Macaulay.
(3.41) Problem 6. Give the connection between our approach and function's approach to the intersection theory in [18] or [19] (see our remark on example (3.8).
(3.42) Problem 7. Is it possible to give an extension of our approach to the intersection theory for pure dimensional subvarieties $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{r}, r \geq$ 2 of an ambient smooth variety $Z$ ?
(3.43) Problem 8. (David Buchsbaum) Describe all intersection numbers of $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ along $C$ as Euler -Poincare Characteristic.
(3.44) Problem 9. (David Eisenbud) Assume that $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ are irreducible subvarieties of $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$. Suppose that $V_{1} \subseteq V_{2}$. Then describe all elements of the collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of the main theorem (2.1)

In connection with this problem, we want to study the following example.
(3.45) Example. Let $V_{1}=V_{2}$ be defined by the equation $X_{1}^{2}+X_{2}^{2}-X_{0}^{2}=$ 0 in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{2}$. Then it is not hard to show that our collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of the main theorem (2.1) is given by:
$C_{1}: X_{1}^{2}+X_{2}^{2}-X_{0}^{2}=0$ and two imbedded points, say $C_{2}$ and $C_{3}$, which are defined over $\bar{K}$.

Therefore we get

$$
4=\operatorname{deg}\left(V_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{2}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{3} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right) \operatorname{deg}\left(C_{i}\right) .
$$

Hence $j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C_{1}\right)=1$ for all $i=1,2,3$.
(3.46) Proposition. Let $V_{1}, V_{2}, V_{3}$ be pure dimensional varieties in $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$. Then

$$
\begin{aligned}
\prod_{i=1}^{3} \operatorname{deg}\left(V_{i}\right) & =\sum_{D \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2} V_{3}} j\left(V_{1}, V_{2}, V_{3} ; D\right) \operatorname{deg}(D) \\
& =\sum_{C \subset V_{1} \cap V_{2}}\left[j\left(V_{1}, V_{2} ; C\right) \sum_{E \subset V_{3}} j\left(C, V_{3} ; E\right) \operatorname{deg}(E)\right]
\end{aligned}
$$

where $D$ runs through the collection $\left\{D_{i}\right\}$ of the general main theorem (2.25) C runs through the collection $\left\{C_{i}\right\}$ of the main theorem (2.1) for $V_{1}$ and $V_{2}$ and $E$ runs through the collection $\left\{E_{i}\right\}$ of the main theorem (2.1) for $C$ and $V_{3}$.

Proof. Immediate from main theorem (2.1) and (2.25)
(3.47) Problem 10. Let $V_{1}, \ldots, V_{s}$ be pure dimensional subvarieties of $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$. Let $C$ an irreducible component of $V_{1} \cdots V_{S}, s \geq 1$. Then is it true that

$$
j\left(V_{1}, \ldots, V_{S} ; C\right) \geq \prod_{i=1}^{s} J\left(V_{i}, C ; C\right) ?
$$

Also give a characterization for the equality.
(3.48) Remark. In 1937, 0. Zariski proved the following statement (see: Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 41(1937), 249-265): if the origin is an $m_{i}$-fold point of $n$ hypersurfaces $F_{1}, \ldots, F_{n}$ of $\mathbb{P}_{k}^{n}$ and it is an isolated point of intersection of these $n$ varieties, then the intersection multiplicity at the origin is not less than $m_{1} m_{2} \cdots m_{n}$, by assuming that the hypersurfaces $F_{1}, \ldots, F_{n}$ have only a finite number of common points. Other proofs have been given, for example, by 0 . Perron (see:Bayer. Akad. Wiss. Math. Natur. K1. Sitzungsber. Jahrgang 1954, 179-199) or by H. Gigl (see: Monatsh. math. 60(1956), 198-204). Also Zariski's theorem is a special case of a theorem given by D.G. Northcott (see: Quart. j. math. Oxford Ser. (2)4 (1953), 67-80) or by W. Vogel (see: Monatsh. math. 71(1967), 238-247) as an illustration of the general theory which was developed in these papers. Studying our problem (3.47), we want to give an extension of these observations. In the meanwhile, R. Achilles proved the above inequality. The characterization of the equality is yet open. We want to conclude these notes with the following conjecture:

Conjecture. Let $X$ and $Y$ be two pure dimensional subschemes of $\mathbb{P}_{K}^{n}$ given by the ideals $I(X)$ and $I(Y)$. Then $\operatorname{deg}(X)$. $\operatorname{deg}(Y) \geq$ number of prime ideals $\mathscr{Y}$ belonging to $I(X)+I(Y)$ such that $\operatorname{dim} \mathscr{Y} \geq \operatorname{dim} X+$ $\operatorname{dim} Y-n$.

## Bibliography

[1] Abhyankar, S.S: Historical ramblings in algebraic geometry and related algebra, Amer. Math. Monthly 83(1976), 409-448.
[2] Auslander, M. and D.A. Buchsbaum: Codimension and multiplicity, Ann. of math. 68(1958),625-657.
[3] Behrens,E.-A: Zur Schnittmultiplizitat uneigentlicher Komponenten in der algebraischen Geometric, Math. Z.55(1952), 199-215.
[4] Bezout, E: Sur le degre des equations resultants dei evanouissement des inconnus, Memoires presentes par divers savants al' Academie des science de 1; Institutede France, 1764.
[5] Bezout, E: Sur le degre resultant des methodes d'elimination entre plusieurs equations, Memories presentes par divers savants a1' Academie des sciences de 1 Institut de France 1764.
[6] Bezout, E.: Sur le degre des equations resultants de I evanouissement des inconnus, Histoire de 1' Academie Royale des Sciences, annee 1764, 288-338, Paris 1767.
[7] Bezout, E.: Theorie generale des equations algebriques, Paris 1770
[8] Boda, E and W. Vogel: On systems of parameters, local intersection multiplicity and Bezout's Theorem, Proc. Amer. Math. Soc 78(1980),1-7.
[9] Buchsbaum, D.A: Complexes in local ring theory, In: Some aspects of ring theory. C.I.M.E. Rom 1965.
[10] Budach, L. und W. Vogel: Cohen-Macaulay moduin und der Bezoutsche Satz, Monatsh. Math. 73 (1969), 97-111.
[11] Chevalley, C.: Intersection of algebraic and algebroid varieties, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 57(1945), 1-85.
[12] Chevalley, C: On the theory of local rings, Ann. of Math. 44(1943),690-708.
[13] De Boer, J.H.: The intersection multiplicity of a connected component, Math. Ann. 172(1967), 238-246.
[14] Dieudonne, J.: The historical development of algebraic geometry, Amer. Math. Monthly 79(1972), 827-866.
[15] Enriques, F.: Sui sistemi continui di curve appartnenti ad una superficie algebrica, Comm. Math. Helv. 15 (1943),227-237.
[16] Euler, L.: Sur une contradiction apparente dans Ia doctrine des lignes courbes, In: Actis Berolinesibus, 1748.
[17] Fulton, W.: Intersection theory, Notes made for the 1980 Summer School in Cortona, Italy.
[18] Fulton, W.: Intersection theory, New York-Heidelberg-Berlin Tokyo: Springer 1983.
[19] Fulton, W and R. Macpherson: Defining algebraic intersection, In: Algebraic geometry, Proc., Troms $\theta$, Norway 1977, 1-30, Lecture Notes in Math. 687, Springer Verlag 1978.
[20] Gaub, C.F.: Demonstratio nova theorematis omnem functionem algebraicam unius variables in factores reales primi velsecundi gradus resolvi posse, Doktordissertation, Helmstedt 1799.
[21] Goto, S.: On the Cohen-Macaulayfication of certain Buchsbaum rings, Nagoya Math. J. 80(1980), 107-116.
[22] Goto, S. and Y. Shimoda: On the Rees algebras over local rings I, Preprint, Nihon University and Metropolitan University,Tokya, 1978.
[23] Goto, S. and Y. Shimoda: On Rees algebras over Buchesbaum rings, J. Math. Kyoto University 20(1980), 691-708.
[24] Grothendieck, A.: Esquisse d' un programme pour une theorie des intersections sur les schemas generaux, In Lecture Notes in Math. 225, Springer-Verlag, Berlin-New York, 1971.
[25] Grobner, W.: Idealtheoretischer Aufbau der algebraischen Geometrie, Teubner, Leipzig, 1941.
[26] Grobner,W.: Moderne algebraische Geometrie. Die idealthe oretischen Grundlagen, Wien-Innsbruck: Springer 1949.
[27] Grobner,W.: Uber den multiplizitasbegriff in der alge braischen Geometrie, Math. Nachr. 4(1951), 193-201.
[28] Grobner,W.: Uber den idealtheoretischen Beweis des Satzes von Benzout, Monatsh. Math. 55(1951),82-86.
[29] Grobner,W.: Uber die idealtheoretische Grundlegung der algebraischen Geometrie, In: Proc. Intern. Congress of mathematicians, Amsterdam 1954, Groningen 1956, Vol. III, 447-456. Nachdruck in: Geometrie, pp.90-99 Mannheim: B.1.1972.
[30] Grobner,W.: Teoria degli ideali e geometria algrbrica, Cremonese Roma, 1964.
[31] Grobner,W.: Algebraische Geometrie I, II, Mannheim: BI. 1968 and 1970.
[32] Hartshorne,R.: Algebraic geometry, Berlin-New York Springer 1977.
[33] Herrmann, M. und W. Vogel: Bemerkungen zur Multiplizitatstheorie von Grobner und Serre, J. Reine Angew. Math. 241(1970),4246.
[34] Herrmann, M;R. Schmidt and W. Vogel: Theorie der normalen Flacheheit, Teubner-Texte zur mathematik, Leipzig, 1977.
[35] Hilbert, D,: Uber die Theorie der algebraischen Formen, Math. Ann. 36(1890),473-534.
[36] Jacobi, C.G.J.: De ralationibus, quae locum habere debent inter puncta intersectionis duarum curvarum vel trium superficierum algebraicarum dati ordinis, simul cum enodatione paradoxi algebraici, j. Reine Angew. Math 15(1836),285-308.
[37] Kleiman, S.L.: Motives. In:Algebraic geometry, Oslo 1970. Proc. of the $5^{\text {th }}$ Nordic Summer School in Math., F.Oort, editor, Woethers-Noordhoff, Publ. Groningen, The Netherlands.
[38] Kleiman, S.L.: Problem 15. rigorous foundation of Schubert's enumerative calculus, Proc. Symposia in pure Math. 28(1976),445482.
[39] Kleiman, S.L.: The enumerative theory of singularities, Preprint, MIT, Cambridge 1977.
[40] Knesser, M.: Erganzung zu einer Arbeit von Hellmuth Kneser Uber den Fundamentalsstz der Algebra, Math. Zeit. 177(1981), 285-287.
[41] Kohn, G.: Uber das prinzip der Erhaltung der Anzahl, Archiv der Math. und Physik (3)4,312(1903).
[42] Krull, W.: Diemennsionstheorie in Stellenringen, Crelle Journal 179 (1930), 204-226.
[43] Kunz, E: Einfuhrung in die kommutative Algebra und algebraische Geometrie, Braunschweig-Wiesbaden, Vieweg, 1980.
[44] Lasker, E.: Zur Theorie der Moduln und Ideals, Math. Ann. 60(1905),20-116.
[45] Lazarsfeld, R.: Excess intersection of divisors, Compositio Math. 43(1981), 281-296.
[46] Lefschetz, S.: L'Analysis situs et la geometrie algebrique, Gauthier-Villars, Paris, 1924.
[47] Leung, K.-T.: Die multiplizitaten in der algebraischen Geometrie, Math. Ann. 135 (1958),170-191.
[48] Maclaurin, C.: Geometria organica sive des cripto linearum curverum universalis, London, 1720.
[49] Macaulay, F.S.: Algebraic theory of modular systems, Cambridge Tracts 19(1916).
[50] Mumford, D.: Algebraic geometry I, Berlin-New York: Springer 1976.
[51] Murthy,M.P.: Commutative Algebra I, University of Chicago, Chicago, 1975.
[52] Nagata, M.: Local rings, Interscience Publ., New York 1962.
[53] Newton, J.: Geometria analytica, 1680.
[54] Noether, E.: Idealtheorie in Ringbereichen, Math, Ann. 83,24 (1921),24-66.
[55] Northcott, D.G.: Lessons on rings, modules and multiplicities, Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 1968.
[56] Patil, D.P. and W. Vogel: Remarks on the algebraic approach to intersection theory, Monatsh. Math. 96 (1983),233-250.
[57] Perron, O.: Studien Uber den Vielfachheitsbegriff und den Bezoutschen Satz, Math. Zeitschr. 49 (1944), 654-680.
[58] Perron, P.: Ein Beweis des Fundamentalsatzes der Algebra im Reellin, Ann. Math. Pura Appl. (4),28(1949),183-187.
[59] Pieri, M.: Formule di coincidenza per le serie algebraiche as die coppie di punti dello spazio a n dimensioni, Rend. Circ. Mat. Palermo 5(1891),225-268.
[60] Ramanujam, C.P.: On a geometric interpretation of multiplicity, Invent. Math. 22 (1973/74),63-67.
[61] Renschuch, B.: Verallgemeinerungen des Bezoutschen Satzes, S.B Saches. Akad. Wiss. Leipziq Math. Natur. K1.107 Heft 4, Berlin 1966.
[62] Renschuch, B.,J.Stuckrad und W. Vogel: Weitere Bemerkungen zu einum Problem der Schnittheorie und uber ein Mab con A. Seidenberg fur die Imperfektheit, J. Algebra 37 (1975) 447-471.
[63] Renschuch, B. and W. Vogel: Zum Nachweis arithmetischer Cohen Nacaulay-Varietaten, Monatsh. Math. 85 (1978),201-210.
[64] Renschuch, B. und W. Vogel: Uber den Bezoutschen Satz seit den Untersuchungen von B.L.van der Waerden, Beitr. Algebra. Geom. 13 (1982), 95-109.

128 [65] Reufel, M.: Beitrage zur multiplizitaten-und speziali sierungstheorie I, In: Gesellsch. Mat. Datenverar beitung Bonn, Ber. Nr. 57,177-201, Bonn 1972.
[66] Rohn, K.: Zusatz zu E. Study: Das Prinzip der Erhaltung der Anzahl, Berichte Sachs. Akad. Leipzig 68.92(1916).
[67] Salmon, G.: On the conditions that an equation should have equal roots, Cambridge and Dublin Math. J. 5(1850),159-165.
[68] Salmon, G. and W. Fiedler: Analytische Geometrie des Raumes, 2. Auflage, Teubner-Verlag, Liepzig, 1874.
[69] Samuel, P.: Methodes d' algebre abstraite en geometrie algebrique, Ergeb, der Math.,H.4. Berlin-Gottingen heidelberg: Springer 1955.
[70] Schenzel, P.: Applications of dualizing complexes to Buchsbaum rings, Adv, in Math. 44 (1982),61-77.
[71] Schubert,H.: Kalcul der abzahlnden Geometrie, Liepzig 1879.
[72] Serre, J.-P.: Algebre locale-multiplicites, Lecture Notes in Math. Vol. 11, Berlin- New York:Springer 1965.
[73] Severi,F.: II Principio della Conservazione del Numero, Rendiconti Circolo Mat. Palermo 33 (1912), 313.
[74] Severi, F.: Un nouvo campo di ricerche nella geometria soprauna superficies sopra una varieta algebrica, Mem. Accad. Ital. Mat. 3, No. 5 (1932).
[75] Severi, F.: Lezioni di Analisi, vol. I, second ed., Bologna 1941.
[76] Severi, F.: Intorno ai sistemi continui di curve sopra una superficie algebrica, Conn. Math. Helve. 15 (1943), 238-248.
[77] Severi, F.: Uber die Darstellung algebraischer Mannigfaltigkeiten als Durchschnitte von Formen, Abh. Math. Sem. Hanischen Univ. 15(1943), 97-119.
[78] Severi, F.: II concetto generale di molteplicita delle soluzioni pei sistemi di equazioni algebraiche e la reoria dell'eliminazione, Annali di Math. 26 (1947), 221-270.
[79] Steiner, J.: Uber die Flachen dritten Grades, J. Reine Angew Math. 53 (1857), 133-141.
[80] Stuckrad,J und W. Vogel: Uber die $h_{1}$-Bedingung in der idealtheoretischen Multiolizitatstheorie, In: Beitr Alg. Geom. 1 (1971),7376.
[81] Stuckrad, J und W. Vogel: Ein Korrekturglied in der Multiolizitatstheorie von D.G. Northcott und Anwendungen, Monatsh. Math. 76 (1972), 264-271.
[82] Stuckrad, J und W. Vogel: Eine Verallgemeinerung der Cohen-Macaulay-Ringe und Anwendungen auf ein Problem der Multiolizitatstheorie, J. Math. Kyoto Univ. 13 (1973), 513-528.
[83] Stuckrad, J und W. Vogel: Uber das Amsterdamer Programm von W.Grobner und Buchsbaum Varietaten, Monatsh. Math. 78 (1974),433-445.
[84] Stuckrad, J and W. Vogel: Toward a theory of Buchsbaum singularities, Amer.J. Math. 100 (1978),727-746.
[85] Stuckrad, J and W. Vogel: An algebraic approach to the Intersection theory, In: The curves seminar at Queen's Univ. Vol. II,1-32. Queen's papers in pure and applied mathematics, Kingston, Ontario, Canada, 1982.
[86] Sylvester,J.J.: On a general method of determining by mere inspection the derivations from two equations of any degree, Philosophical Magazine 16 (1840),132-135.
[87] Trung, Ngo Viet: Uber die Ubertragung der Ringeigenschaften zwischen R und $\mathrm{R}[\mathrm{u}] /(\mathrm{F})$ und allgemeine Hyper flachen-schnitte, Thesis, Martin- Luther-University, Halle 1978.
[88] Van der Waerden, B.L.: Der multiplizitatsbegriff der algebra ischen Geometrie, Math. Ann. 97(1927), 756-774.
[89] Van der Waerden, B.L.: On Hilbert's function, series of composition of ideals and a generalisation of the Theorem of Bezout, Proc. Roy. Acad. Amsterdam 31 (1928), 749-770.
[90] Van der Waerden, B.L.: Eine Verallgemeinerung des Bezoutschen Theorems, Math. Ann. 99(1928, 297-541), and 100 (1928)752.

131 [91] Van der Eaerden, B.L.: Topologische Begrundung des Kalkuls der abzahlenden Geometrie, Math. Ann. 102, 337 (1930).
[92] Van der Eaerden, B.L.: Einfuhrung in die algebraische Geometrie, 2. ed,. Berlin-New York: Springer 1973.
[93] Vogel, W.: Grenzen fur die Gultigkeit des Bezoutschen Satzes, Monatsb. Deutsch. Akad. Wiss. Berlin 8(1966), 1-7.
[94] Vogel, W.: Idealtheoretische Schnittpunktsatze in homogenen Ringen uber Ringen mit Vielfachkettensatz, Math. Nachr. 34 (1967), 277-295.
[95] Vogel, W.: Uber eine Vermutung von D.A. Buchsbaun, J. Algebra 25 (1973), 106-112.
[96] Vogel, W.: Probleme bei der Weiterentwicklung des Vielfacheitsbegriffes aus dem Fundamentalsatz der klassischen Algebra, In: Mitt. Math. Gesellsch. der DDR, Heft 3/4,1975, 134-147.
[97] Vogel, W.: A non-zero-divisor characterization of Buchsbaum modules, Michigan Math. J. 28(1981), 147-152.
[98] Vogel, W.: On Bezout's Theorem, In: Seminar D.Eisenbud/B. Singh/W. Vogel, Vol. 1, 113-144, Tenbner-Texte zur Mathematik, Band 29, Tenbner-Verlag, Leipzig, 1980.
[99] Vogel, W.: Remark on the number of components of the intersection of projective subvarieties, to appear in Iraquij. Sci.
[100] Vogel, W.: Old and new problems about Bezout's Theorem, 132 Preprint, Martin-Luther University, Halle, 1982.
[101] Wavrik, john J.: Computers and the multiplicity of polynomial roots, Amer. Math Monthly 89 (1982), 34-36 and 45-56.
[102] Weierstrab, K.: Vorbereitungssatz, Berlin University Lecture of 1860, contained in: Einige auf die Theorie der analytischen Funktionen mehrerer Veranderlicher sich beziehende Satze. Mathematische Werke, II (1895), 135-188.
[103] Weil, A.: Foundations of algebraic geometry, Amer. Math. Soc coll. Publ. Vol. XXIX, Provindence, R.I., 1946.
[104] Wright, D.J.: General multiplicity theory, Proc. Lond. Math (3), 15(1965), 269-288.
[105] Wright, D.J.: A characterisation of multiplicity, Montsh. Math. 79 (1975), 165-167.
[106] Zariski, O and P. Samuel: Commutative algebra, Vol I and II, D. van Nostrand Company, Princeton, 1958 and 1960.

